CONTENTS

1. Parts of Speech .......................................................... 1
2. Nouns ........................................................................ 2
3. Pronouns ..................................................................... 8
4. Adjectives .................................................................... 19
5. Verbs .......................................................................... 27
6. Adverbs ........................................................................ 34
7. Prepositions ................................................................. 39
8. Conjunctions ............................................................... 41
9. Interjections ................................................................. 45
10. Number ......................................................................... 47
11. Gender ......................................................................... 53
12. Person .......................................................................... 58
13. Case ............................................................................. 60
14. Degrees of Comparison ............................................... 66
15. The Sentence ............................................................. 70
16. Articles ......................................................................... 74
17. Verb Forms ................................................................. 86
18. Tense ........................................................................... 92
19. Changing into the Negative .......................................... 111
20. Changing into the Interrogative .................................... 114
21. Subject-Verb Agreement ............................................... 120
22. Infinitive, Gerund and Participle ................................. 126
23. Uses of Prepositions .................................................. 132
24. Punctuation and the Use of Capital Letters ............... 144
25. Voice .......................................................................... 156
26. Direct and Indirect Speech ........................................... 175

***
1. Parts of Speech

* All the English words are divided into eight groups according to the work they do in a sentence. Each group is called part of speech.

1. Noun (संज्ञा)
2. Pronoun (सर्वनाम)
3. Adjective (विशेषण)
4. Verb (क्रिया)
5. Adverb (क्रियाविशेषण)
6. Preposition (संबंधवोधक अव्यय)
7. Conjunction (समुच्चयवोधक अव्यय)
8. Interjection (स्त्रियादिबोधक अव्यय)

पिछली कक्षाओं में आपने Parts of Speech का कुछ अध्ययन जरूर किया होगा। अब आप यहीं इनका अलग-अलग विस्तारपूर्वक अध्ययन करेंगे। लेकिन आपको एक बात शुरू से ही ध्यान में रखना अत्यंत आवश्यक है—

शब्दों का वर्गीकरण वाक्यों में उनके कार्य एवं प्रयोग की ही दृष्टि से किया गया है। अंग्रेजी भाषा में अनेक ऐसे शब्द हैं जिनका प्रयोग वाक्यों में देखे बिना यह नहीं कहा जा सकता कि ये किस Part of Speech के अंतर्गत आते हैं। उदाहरण के लिए love, fast और in को लें। वाक्यों में इनका प्रयोग देखे बिना आप यह नहीं कह सकते कि ये किस group में आते हैं। लेकिन वाक्यों में इन्हें देखने के बाद आपके सामने कोई confusion नहीं रह जाता है—

I love my country. (love — verb)
She is my love. (love — noun)
This is a fast train. (fast — adjective)
The boy runs fast. (fast — adverb)
He is playing in the field. (in — preposition)
Please come in. (in — adverb)

इसलिए आप ऐसे शब्दों को मंगीरता से लें और इनका वर्गीकरण वाक्यों में प्रयोग देखने के बाद ही करें।
2. Nouns

Ramu is a farmer.
The cow gives milk.
India is a country.

There is a book on the table.
My father believes in honesty.
I can’t forget his kindness.

इन वाक्यों में आए शब्द Ramu, farmer और father व्यक्तियों के नाम हैं; cow एक जानवर का नाम है; milk, book और table वस्तुओं के नाम हैं; India और country व्याख्यानों के नाम हैं; honesty और kindness विचार/भाव के नाम हैं। दुनिया में ऐसे ही हजारों नाम हैं। Grammar की भाषा में इन्हें हम Nouns कहते हैं।

Definition: किसी व्यक्ति, जानवर, व्याख्यान, वस्तु, विचार या भाव के नाम को Noun कहते हैं।

* A noun is the name of a person, animal, place, thing, feeling or idea.
* A noun is the name of anything.
* A noun is a naming word.

उपर दी गई परिभाषाओं से यह स्पष्ट है कि Noun एक naming word है। हम जो भी देखते हैं, जानते हैं, सोचते हैं या अनुभव करते हैं, उन सभी के नाम Nouns हैं।

Kinds of the Noun: Noun के पाँच भेद हैं।

1. Proper Noun (व्यक्तिवाचक संज्ञा)
2. Common Noun (जातिवाचक संज्ञा)
3. Collective Noun (समूहवाचक संज्ञा)
4. Material Noun (इवाचक संज्ञा)
5. Abstract Noun (भाववाचक संज्ञा)

1. Proper Noun: किसी व्यक्ति, व्याख्यान, जानवर या वस्तु के खास नाम को Proper Noun कहते हैं। Proper का अर्थ है ― one’s own.

* A proper noun is the name of a particular person, animal, place or thing.

Examples: Ram, Shyam, Geeta, India, Patna, Tom, Moti, Lucy, Yamuna, Ramayana, Bible, Sunday, Monday, January, February, Holi, Id, The Hindustan Times, etc.
2. **Common Noun**: जिस Noun से किसी खास व्यक्ति, जानवर, स्थान या वस्तु का बोध न होकर पूरी जाति या श्रेणी का बोध होता है, उसे Common Noun कहते हैं। Common का अर्थ है — shared by all of the same group.

* A common noun is a name given in common to every person, animal, place or thing of the same class or kind.

*Examples*: boy, girl, cat, dog, bird, snake, man, table, pen, book, river, mountain, town, country, etc.

**Note**: Sita, Geeta और Mala से खास लड़कियों का बोध होता है, अतः ये Proper Nouns हैं। परंतु 'girl' कहने से किसी खास लड़की का बोध न होकर किसी भी लड़की का बोध होता है। अतः: 'girl' एक Common Noun है।

Leela is a proper noun, but girl is a common noun.
Manoj is a proper noun, but boy is a common noun.
Patna is a proper noun, but city is a common noun.
Bihar is a proper noun, but state is a common noun.
Moti is a proper noun, but dog is a common noun.
India is a proper noun, but country is a common noun.
Yamuna is a proper noun, but river is a common noun.

3. **Collective Noun**: जिस Noun से एक ही तरह के व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के समूह का बोध होता है, उसे Collective Noun कहते हैं।

* A collective noun is the name of a number of persons or things taken together and spoken of as one whole.

*Examples*: class (वर्ग), crowd (पीड़), army (सेना), team (इल), family (परिवार), committee (मिति), mob (पीड़), bunch (गुल्म), flock (शूंड), etc.

'army' कहने से सैनिकों के समूह का बोध होता है। 'crowd' कहने से व्यक्तियों के समूह का बोध होता है। इसी प्रकार उपयुक्त अन्य शब्द किसी-न-किसी समूह का बोध कराते हैं। अतः: ये Collective Nouns हैं।

4. **Material Noun**: जिस Noun से किसी क्रिया/पदार्थ का बोध होता है, जिसे मापा या तीला जाता है, किंतु गिना नहीं जाता है, जिसे विभिन्न वस्तुओं का निर्माण होता है, उसे Material Noun कहते हैं।

* A material noun is the name of a material substance.

*Examples*: water, milk, wood (लकड़ी), gold (सोना), iron (लोहा), stone (पत्थर), rice, ink, sugar (चीनी), oil (तेल), paper (कागज), ghce, wheat (गेहूँ), flour (चावल), bread (रोटी), chalk (क्यूरी), meat (मांस), silver (चौंदी), brass (चील), pulse (शल), wool (कँड), etc.
Note: wood Material Noun है, परंतु इससे निर्मित chair, table, bench, house हलादि Common Nouns हैं। bread भी Material Noun है। अत: आप 'एक रोटी' के लिए 'a bread' न लिखकर 'a piece of bread' लिखें।

5. Abstract Noun: उस गुण, अवस्था, विचार या भाव के नाम को Abstract Noun कहते हैं जिसे देखा या छुआ नहीं जा सकता है, सिर्फ अनुभव किया जा सकता है।

* An abstract noun is the name of some quality, state, feeling or idea that we can only think of or feel but cannot see or touch.

Examples: goodness (अच्छाई), kindness (दयालुता), darkness (शांता), foolishness (पूर्वता), greatness (महानता), sickness (गीरानी), weakness (अचानक), richness (धनरूप), sweetness (भित्तिक), honesty (सावधानता), bravery (भावता), wisdom (बुद्धिमत्ता), beauty (सुंदरता), truth (सच्चाई), laughter (हैतरी), love (प्यार), sleep (प्रदोष), death (मृत्यु), youth (जवानी), poverty (गरीबी), heat (गर्मी), boyhood (लड़कपन), childhood (बचपन), friendship (दोस्ती), etc.

Note: Arts एवं Sciences के नाम भी Abstract Nouns हैं। जैसे—grammar, physics, chemistry, music, history, etc.

**EXERCISE 1**

* Direction: Pick out the nouns in the following sentences. Say whether they are proper, common, collective, material or abstract.

Examples:
(a) Ram is the best boy in the class.

(b) Sympathy is better than gold.
   Sympathy — Abstract Noun, gold — Material Noun.

1. Sohan has a red car.
2. Children drink milk.
3. My brother is the captain of the team.
4. Patna is the capital of Bihar.
5. The cat has two eyes.
6. Gandhijee was a great leader of India.
7. The Ganges is a holy (पवित्र) river.
8. There is a cap on his head.
10. The teacher taught me physics and chemistry.
11. Monday is the first day of the week.
12. He has been a good singer (गायक) since his childhood.
13. Friendship is a boon (बरदान).
14. Without health there is no happiness (सुशी).
15. He gave me a bunch of grapes (अंगूर).
16. Ram eats bread, mangoes and sugar.
17. The ring is made of silver.
18. There is a crowd (भीड़) on the road.
19. I have love (प्रेम) for my friends.
20. The juice (रस) has no sweetness (मिठास).

EXERCISE 2

Direction: In each of the following groups of words, pick out the noun that belongs to a different class of nouns from the rest.

Examples:
(a) gold, rice, ghee, mango, sand  Ans. mango
(b) father, brother, family, son, friend  Ans. family

1. chair, boy, watch, wood, river
2. gold, silver, ring, iron, brass (पीतल)
3. boy, childhood, girl, son, daughter
4. book, paper, pen, student
5. mango, apple, juice, orange
6. table, desk, class, room, chair
7. singer (गायक), music (संगीत), dancer, player (खिलाड़ी)
8. milk, ink, tea, coffee, bread, apple
9. teacher, student, class, doctor, boy
10. book, apple, nurse, jug, wood
11. apple, mango, orange, rice, banana (केला)
12. music, bunch, army, crowd, mob
13. class, crowd, team, player, family
14. police, soldier, army, commander (सेनापति)
15. bottle, cup, boy, wine (शराब)
16. day, month, year, Sunday, ball
17. death (मृत्यु), fear (डर), mob (भीड़), goodness
18. physics, chemistry, subject, friendship
19. car, petrol, driver, road, book
20. health, disease (बीमारी), pain (दर्द), doctor
Modern Classification of the Noun

आधुनिक अंग्रेजी व्याकरण (Modern English Grammar) में Nouns को तीन भागों में बाँटा गया है —

1. Proper Noun (व्यक्तिवाचक संज्ञा)
2. Countable Noun (गणनीय संज्ञा)
3. Uncountable Noun (अगणनीय संज्ञा)

1. Proper Noun: किसी व्यक्ति, जानवर, स्थान, दिन, महीना, वस्तु, इत्यादि के खास नाम को Proper Nouns कहते हैं।

* A proper noun is the name of a particular person, animal, place, day, month or thing.

Examples: Sohan, Tom, Lucy, Nepal, Delhi, Sunday, Monday, January, February, Ganges, Bagmati, Himalayas, Ramayana, Gita, The Times of India, etc.

2. Countable Noun: जिस Noun को हम गिन सकते हैं, उसे Countable Noun कहते हैं।

* The noun which can be counted is called the countable noun.

Examples: cow, dog, class, man, leg, eye, book, star, river, army, state, girl, child, student, etc.

3. Uncountable Noun: जिस Noun को हम नहीं गिन सकते हैं, उसे Uncountable Noun कहते हैं।

* The noun which cannot be counted is called the uncountable noun.

Examples: oil, water, rice, bread, butter, flour, wheat, brass, silver, love, beauty, honesty, truth, boyhood, childhood, youth, kindness, goodness, friendship, knowledge (ज्ञान), courage (हिम्मत), fear (डर), etc.

Note: 1. Uncountable Noun के पहले न तो a/an का प्रयोग होता है, न ही इसका Plural Form होता है। अर्थात् a oil, a water, oils, wheats, इत्यादि लिखना गलत होगा। अगर कहीं Plural Form बनता भी है, तो उसके अर्थ में परिवर्तन होता है।

2. Countable Noun के पहले a/an का प्रयोग होता है और इसका Plural Form होता है। जैसे — a boy, boys, an ant, ants.

3. हिंदी भाषा में रोटी एक गणनीय संज्ञा है, परंतु अंग्रेजी भाषा में bread Uncountable Noun है। अतः आप ‘एक रोटी’ की अंग्रेजी ‘a bread’ न लिखकर ‘a piece of bread’ लिखें। चार रोटियाँ — four pieces of bread.
4. इसे ध्यान में रखें —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>पुराने Grammar के अनुसार Noun के भेद</th>
<th>आधुनिक Grammar के अनुसार Noun के भेद</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Proper Noun</td>
<td>1. Proper Noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Common Noun</td>
<td>2. Countable Noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Material Noun</td>
<td>को मिलाकर</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Abstract Noun</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXERCISE 3**

*Direction: Pick out the nouns in the following sentences. Say whether they are proper, countable or uncountable.*

*Example:* Mr Chopra is a man of great knowledge.

*Ans.* Mr Chopra — Proper Noun, Man — Countable Noun, Knowledge — Uncountable Noun.

1. The cow is an animal.
2. A dog has four legs.
3. Ram is a student of this school.
4. Mumbai is a big city of India.
5. There are milk, rice, bread and oranges on the table.
6. A week has seven days.
7. The students are reading books in the class.
8. Children have honesty.
9. The Ganges is a river.
10. I have love for my friends.
11. This chair is made of wood.
12. An apple is good for health.
13. The little girl has no fear.
14. He has kindness and greatness.
15. Our army showed great courage in the battle last year.
16. His son is the captain of the team.
17. I like the music of India.
18. The Gita and the Ramayana are holy books.
19. My friend does not take coffee or tea in the morning.
20. He has been a good singer since his childhood.
3. Pronouns

इन वाक्यों को देखें —

Ram is a student. He reads in class VI.
Sita is a dancer. She is very beautiful.
My father has a car. It is red.
The boys are absent today. They will come tomorrow.

इन वाक्यों में आए शब्द He, She, It और They पर विचार करें। ये किसी-न-किसी Noun के बदले में प्रयुक्त हुए हैं। He का प्रयोग Ram के बदले में, She का प्रयोग Sita के बदले में, It का प्रयोग car के बदले में और They का प्रयोग boys के बदले में हुआ है। ऐसे शब्दों को Grammar की भाषा में Pronouns कहते हैं।

Definition: Pronoun वह शब्द है जो किसी Noun के बदले में प्रयुक्त होता है।

* A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun.
* A pronoun stands for a noun.

Pronoun की परिभाषा से रूढ़ है कि यह Noun का substitute है। जब हम किसी कारणवश Noun का प्रयोग करना नहीं चाहते, तब उस Noun के बदले उपयुक्त Pronoun का प्रयोग करते हैं। Pronoun की उपयोगिता को समझने के लिए इन वाक्यों पर विचार करें —

Ram is my friend. Ram reads in my class. Ram is absent today, because Ram is ill.

यहाँ Ram (Noun) का प्रयोग बार-बार होने से संपूर्ण expression भद्रता से लगता है। अगर दूसरे और तीसरे वाक्य में Ram के बदले He का प्रयोग करें, तो यह भद्रापन समाप्त हो जाएगा —

Ram is my friend. He reads in my class. He is absent today, because he is ill.

Kinds of the Pronoun: Pronoun के निम्नलिखित प्रमुख भेद हैं —

1. Personal Pronoun (व्यक्तिवाचक सर्वनाम)
2. Possessive Pronoun (अधिकारवाचक सर्वनाम)
3. Reflexive Pronoun (निजवाचक सर्वनाम)
4. Emphatic Pronoun (बलदायक सर्वनाम)
5. Demonstrative Pronoun (संकेतवाचक सर्वनाम)
6. Indefinite Pronoun (अनिश्चितवाचक सर्वनाम)
7. Distributive Pronoun (व्यक्तिवाचक सर्वनाम)
8. Reciprocal Pronoun (परस्परवाचक सर्वनाम)
9. Relative Pronoun (संबंधवाचक सर्वनाम)
10. Interrogative Pronoun (प्रश्नवाचक सर्वनाम)

1. Personal Pronouns

I, we, you, he, she, it and they are called personal pronouns.

* I, we, you, he, she, it and they are called personal pronouns.

यहाँ Personal का अर्थ है — relating to Persons (First Person/Second Person/Third Person). I और We First Person के Pronouns हैं। You Second Person का Pronoun है। He, She, It और They Third Person के Pronouns हैं। इसलिए इन सातों Pronouns को Personal Pronouns कहा जाता है।

Personal Pronouns के रूप case-wise बदलते हैं, जिन्हें इस सारणी से समझें —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative Case</th>
<th>Possessive Case</th>
<th>Objective Case</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Possessive Adjective</td>
<td>Possessive Pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>My</td>
<td>Mine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>Our</td>
<td>Ours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>Your</td>
<td>Yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>His</td>
<td>His</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>Her</td>
<td>Hers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It</td>
<td>Its</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>Their</td>
<td>Their</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note 1.** Personal Pronouns के सभी forms को आप यहाँ देख रहे हैं। इनमें से My, Our, Your, His, Her, Its और Their की Possessive Adjectives कहा जाता है क्योंकि ये किसी-न-किसी Noun के ठीक पहले प्रयुक्त होते हैं और Adjective की तरह कार्य करते हैं, जैसे —

This is my book.
Those are your books.
That is her book.
Possessive Adjectives: His and Her are such words which are followed by Pronouns to indicate ownership. For example:

This book is his. (his — Pronoun)
I know her. (her — Pronoun)

Note 2: Pronoun can follow the Noun in place of the word of ownership. For example:

This book is mine. (mine — Possessive Pronoun)
These are ours. (ours — Possessive Pronoun)
This saree is hers. (hers — Possessive Pronoun)

Possessive Adjective: This is used to modify the noun and indicate ownership. For example:

That book is yours. (yours — Possessive Adjective)
Those are his. (his — Possessive Adjective)
Those chairs are theirs. (theirs — Possessive Adjective)

Note: In the sentence "His book," His is a Pronoun, while book is a Noun. In the sentence "This is my book," "my" is a Possessive Adjective which modifies the noun "book".

Reflexive Pronouns: These are used when the subject and the object of the sentence refer to the same person. For example:

I hurt myself. (myself — Reflexive Pronoun)
We can help ourselves. (ourselves — Reflexive Pronoun)
She ruined herself. (herself — Reflexive Pronoun)
4. Emphatic Pronouns

जब myself, ourselves, yourself, yourselves, herself, himself, itself और themselves का प्रयोग बाक्य में किसी Noun या Pronoun पर जोर देने के लिए होता है, तब इन्हें Emphatic Pronouns कहा जाता है।

* Myself, ourselves, yourself, yourselves, herself, himself, itself and themselves are called emphatic pronouns when they are used for the sake of emphasis.

इन वाक्यों में इनके प्रयोग को देखें—

I killed the tiger myself.
He himself said so.
She herself liked him.
You can do it yourself.

Note: myself, ourselves, etc. इत्यादि के spelling पर ध्यान दें। Singular Pronoun के साथ self लगाता है और Plural Pronoun के साथ selves लगाता है।

you का प्रयोग जब एक व्यक्ति के लिए होता है, तब yourself और जब इसका प्रयोग अनेक व्यक्तियों के लिए होता है, तब yourselves का प्रयोग होता है। आप जानते हैं कि I, he, she और it Singular Number में हैं। we और they Plural Number में हैं। you का प्रयोग Singular और Plural दोनों वाक्यों में होता है।

EXERCISE 4

Direction: Tell which pronouns/adjectives in the following sentences are personal pronouns/possessive pronouns/reflexive pronouns/emphatic pronouns/possessive adjectives—

Examples:

(a) This is his pen. (his — Possessive Adjective)
(b) This pen is his. (his — Possessive Pronoun)
(c) I myself did that. (I — Personal Pronoun, myself — Emphatic Pronoun)
(d) She washed herself. (She — Personal Pronoun, herself — Reflexive Pronoun)

1. My mother loves me.
2. This book is hers.
3. Ours is black.
4. Our cow is black.
5. This garden is theirs.
6. It belongs to her.
7. This car is his.
8. This is his car.
9. Her face is beautiful.
10. Its colour is black.
11. She praised herself.
12. I hate myself.
13. She herself wrote this.
14. She herself did this.
15. I will do it myself.
16. He enjoyed himself.
17. The horse hurt itself.
18. They blamed themselves.
19. We ourselves can do it.
20. I myself locked the door.

5. Demonstrative Pronouns

जिस Pronoun का प्रयोग वस्तुओं या व्यक्तियों को सूचित, इंगित या निर्देशित करने के लिए किया जाता है, उसे Demonstrative Pronoun कहा जाता है।

* The pronoun used to point out the object or objects to which it refers is called a demonstrative pronoun.

This, That, These और Those मुख्य Demonstrative Pronouns हैं। इनका प्रयोग इन वाक्यों में देखें—

This is a boy. These are balls.
That is a girl. Those are dolls.

Note: जब This, That, These, Those, इत्यादि के ठीक बाद कोई Noun प्रयुक्त रहता है, तब इन्हें Demonstrative Adjectives कहा जाता है, जैसे—

This book is mine.
That book is yours.
These cows are red.
Those cows are brown.
Look at this picture.
What was that noise?

पुनः इन वाक्यों को ध्यान से देखें—

This is my book.
This book is mine.

इन वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त शब्द This, That, These और Those Demonstrative Adjectives हैं।

6. Indefinite Pronouns

जिस Pronoun से किसी निश्चित व्यक्ति या वस्तु का बोध नहीं होता है, वह Indefinite Pronoun कहलाता है।

* An indefinite pronoun refers to persons or things in a general way and does not refer to any person or thing in particular.
Somebody has stolen my pen.
Anybody can beat him.
Some are gentle.
All are foolish.
None can do this.
Many of them were killed.
One must not praise oneself.
None of them are good.
Nothing is perfect.
Any of you can take it.

Vocabulary: somebody—कोई, anybody—कोई, some—कुछ, all—सब, none—कोई नहीं, many—अनेक, nothing—कुछ भी नहीं, any—कोई।

Note: जब some, all, many, one, any, इत्यादि के ठीक बाद कोई Noun प्रयुक्त रहता है, तब वे Adjectives कहलाते हैं। जैसे, इन वाक्यों में some, all, many, one और any Adjectives हैं—
Some boys are ready.
All things have their own values.
There were not many trees there.
I will take you there one day.
Any fool can do it.

7. Distributive Pronouns

जब each, either और neither का प्रयोग Pronoun के रूप में होता है,
तब इन्हें Distributive Pronouns कहा जाता है।

* When each, either and neither are used as pronouns they are called distributive pronouns.

'[each — प्रत्येक, either — दोनों में से कोई एक, neither — दोनों में से कोई नहीं]

इन वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त शब्द each, either और neither Distributive Pronouns हैं—
Each of you is guilty.
Each of the boys is intelligent.
Either of you can take this book.
Neither of the two boys was absent.
Note: जब each, either और neither के ठीक बाद कोई Noun प्रयुक्त रहता है, तब इन्हें Distributive Adjectives कहा जाता है। इन वाक्यों में each, either और neither Distributive Adjectives हैं—

1. Each boy is intelligent.
2. Either road is safe.
3. Neither book is cheap.

8. Reciprocal Pronouns
ehich other और one another को Reciprocal Pronouns कहते हैं।

Each other and one another are called reciprocal pronouns.

They loved each other/one another.

(वे एक-दूसरे को प्यार करते थे।)

each other और one another का अर्थ है — एक दूसरे को।

EXERCISE 5

Direction: Tell which pronouns/adjectives in the following sentences are demonstrative pronouns/indefinite pronouns/distributive pronouns/reciprocal pronouns/demonstrative adjectives/distributive adjectives —

Examples:

(a) This is your book. (this — Demonstrative Pronoun)
(b) This book is yours. (this — Demonstrative Adjective)
(c) Some are born great. (some — Indefinite Pronoun)
(d) Some persons are born great. (use of no pronoun)
(e) Each of the boys can do this. (each — Distributive Pronoun, this — Demonstrative Pronoun)
(f) Each boy can do this work. (each — Distributive Adjective, this — Demonstrative Adjective)

1. This car is yours.
2. This is your car.
3. Do you know this?
4. I know this boy.
5. These are your cows.
6. Are those pens yours?
7. Is this milk?
8. Nobody can beat me.
9. Some were happy.
10. Some boys were happy.
11. One should love God.
12. All boys are naughty.
13. None of them are good.
14. They helped one another.
15. Each boy had a pen.
16. Each of the boys had a pen.
17. Either of you can do.
18. Neither of them are ready.
19. Neither way is safe.
20. They helped each other.
9. Relative Pronouns

Relative Pronoun वाक्य में अपने से पहले प्रयुक्त किसी Noun/ Pronoun के बदले में आकर उस Noun/Pronoun की पुनरुक्ति को रोकता है और उस Noun/Pronoun का संबंध अपने से आगे आनेवाले शब्द-समूह से जोड़ता है।

* A relative pronoun refers to some noun/pronoun going before and relates the said noun/pronoun to a group of words coming after.

who, whom, whose, which, what और that मुख्य Relative Pronouns हैं।

इन वाक्यों पर विचार करें—
This is the book. The book was given to me.

इन दोनों वाक्यों को इस प्रकार जोड़ सकते हैं—
This is the book that was given to me.

यहाँ ‘that’ एक Relative Pronoun है जो अपने से पहले आए Noun (book) के repetition को रोकता है और अभी Noun का संबंध आगे आने वाले शब्द-समूह से जोड़ता है। यहाँ आप एक grammatical term Antecedent से भी परिचित हो जाएं। Antecedent वह Noun/Pronoun है जो Relative Pronoun के पहले प्रयुक्त रहता है। ऊपर दिए गए वाक्य में that का Antecedent ‘book’ है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें। इनमें प्रयुक्त who, which, whom, whose और that Relative Pronouns हैं—

The boy who is playing is my friend.
The chairs which are broken are of no use.
This is the boy whom all praise.
The house whose walls are white is mine.
Take anything that you like.
Here is the book that you lent me.

Note 1. who, whom और whose का प्रयोग व्यक्तियों या बड़े जानवरों के लिए होता है। which का प्रयोग निर्देशी वस्तुओं और जानवरों के लिए होता है। That का प्रयोग सजीव और निर्देशी दोनों के लिए होता है।

Note 2. who, which, whom, whose और what का प्रयोग प्रश्न किए जाने में भी होता है। इस स्थिति में जब ये Pronoun के रूप में प्रयुक्त रहते हैं, तब Interrogative Pronouns कहलाते हैं। जैसे, इन वाक्यों में who, whom, whose, which और what Interrogative Pronouns है—

Who are you?
10. Interrogative Pronouns

* The pronoun used for asking a question is called an interrogative pronoun.

**EXERCISE 6**

*Direction: Tell which pronouns/adjectives in these sentences are relative pronouns/interrogative pronouns/interrogative adjectives —

*Examples:*

(a) Which is your book? (which — Interrogative Pronoun)
(b) Which book is yours? (which — Interrogative Adjective)
(c) This is the book which I bought yesterday.
   (which — Relative Pronoun)
1. Who is there?
2. This is the boy who has stolen my pen.
3. Whom do you love?
4. This is the thief whom the police wants to catch.
5. This is the boy that I told you of.
6. He that is down need fear no fall.
7. Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown.
8. Where is the man who gave you this news?
9. Of whom do you speak?
10. Who might say this?
11. Whose is this book?
12. Whose book is this?
13. This is the shopkeeper whose shop caught fire last night.
14. Which is your box?
15. The book which I bought yesterday is here.
16. Which book did you buy?
17. What is the matter?
18. What work will you do?
19. Who is he?
20. Whose is this umbrella?

**EXERCISE 7**

*Direction: Encircle all the pronouns used in these sentences* —

*Examples:*

(a) **What** is **this**?
(b) This boy will do **this** himself.
(c) **Each** of **them** wanted to defeat **each other**.
(d) **Both** are **yours**.
(e) Each man might help **himself**.

1. This purse might be hers.
2. He himself did this.
3. Whose books are those?
4. Some are born great.
5. I have some milk but he has none.
6. Each of them will win.
7. Who will like to cheat himself?
8. This can be of no help to us.
9. Whose are those books?
10. Whose books are those?
11. Nobody wanted to help anybody.
12. That is theirs and this is ours.
13. What is this?
14. Whom did she love?
15. Either of the two boys may help them.
16. The two sisters loved each other.
17. This is the boy who was absent yesterday.
18. The girl whom you saw is Sheela.
19. Who am I that I should object?
20. What work will you do yourself?
4. Adjectives

It is a good pen. He is brave.
That is a fast train. Milk is sweet.
They are bad persons. Sohan is not lazy.
She is beautiful. A black cow was grazing.

These sentences use words that are 'in adjective' - good, fast, bad, beautiful, brave, sweet, lazy, and black. These words add information to the nouns or pronouns they are attached to. Adjectives are words that describe or modify nouns or pronouns.

Definition: Adjective is a word that adds new information to the meaning of a noun or pronoun.

Note: Some food, all things, much water, several questions, six boys, any boy, this book, which boy, her sister, each man, what work, etc., are adjectives. They add new information to the nouns or pronouns they are attached to.

Kinds of the Adjective: Adjectives can be divided into three main categories:

1. Adjectives of Quality (१०९-ताक विशेषण)
2. Adjectives of Quantity (परिमाणवाचक विशेषण)
3. Adjectives of Number (संख्यावाचक विशेषण)
4. Demonstrative Adjectives (संकेतवाचक विशेषण)
5. Possessive Adjectives (संबंधवाचक विशेषण)
6. Distributive Adjectives (व्यक्तिवाचक विशेषण)
7. Interrogative Adjectives (प्रश्नवाचक विशेषण)
8. Proper Adjectives (व्यक्तिवाचक विशेषण)
9. Emphasizing Adjectives
10. Exclamatory Adjectives

1. Adjectives of Quality

Adjectives of Quality या किसी व्यक्ति या वस्तु के गुण का बोध होता है।

* Adjectives of quality show the quality of a person or thing.

* Examples: good, bad, weak, strong, kind, cruel, sweet, bitter, thin, fat, long, short, hot, cold, beautiful, red, brown, etc.

इन शब्दों में से कुछ का प्रयोग इन वाक्यों में देखें—
Ram is a good boy.
The table is long.
It is very cold.
She is beautiful.
The pen is red.
He was a kind man.

2. Adjectives of Quantity

Adjectives of Quantity या मात्रा या परिमाण का बोध होता है।

* Adjectives of quantity show how much of a thing is meant.

इन वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त शब्द some (कुछ), much (अधिक), little (नहीं के बराबर), whole (पूरा), all (सब), no, any, enough (पर्याप्त) और a lot of (बहुत) Adjectives of Quantity हैं—

He had some/much/little/no/Enough/a lot of rice.
The whole money was distributed.
He has lost all his wealth.
He did not eat any rice.

* Note: ऐसे और भी कई Adjectives of Quantity हैं। वहाँ एक बात विशेष रूप से ध्यान रखनी है कि Adjectives of Quantity से मात्रा या परिमाण का बोध होता है, संख्या का नहीं। इनमें से all, no, some, इत्यादि कुछ ऐसे शब्द हैं जिनका
3. Adjectives of Number

Adjectives of Number से व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं की संख्या या क्रम का बोध होता है।

* Adjectives of number show how many persons or things are meant, or in what order a person or thing stands.

इन वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त few, no, many, some, enough, several, all, one, two, first and second Adjectives of Number हैं —

He had few/no/many/some/several/enough/two horses.
All men must die.
The cat has one tail and two eyes.
He was the first/second man.

ऐसे ही अनेक Adjectives of Number हैं। इनमें से कुछ का प्रयोग मात्र या परिमाण का बोध कराने में भी होता है। ऐसी स्थिति में जब ये Adjective के रूप में प्रयुक्त होते हैं, तब इन्हें Adjectives of Quantity कहा जाता है।

Note 1. Adjectives of Number के अंतर्गत आनेवाले शब्द one, two, three, four, etc को Cardinals तथा first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, etc को Ordinals कहते हैं।

Note 2. Adjectives of Quantity और Adjectives of Number में कुछ शब्द ऐसे हैं जिनका प्रयोग Pronoun के रूप में भी होता है, परंतु इस स्थिति में इनके साथ कोई Noun प्रयुक्त नहीं रहता। जैसे —

Some are born great.
Many of them were killed.
Any of them could do.
Few escaped unhurt.
All is/are mortal.
One should do one’s duty.

Note 3. इन्हें ध्यान से समझें —
I have some milk. (some — adjective of quantity)
I have some mangoes. (some — adjective of number)
Some of them are absent. (some — indefinite pronoun)
EXERCISE 8

Direction: Tell which adjectives in the following sentences are adjectives of quality/adjectives of quantity/adjectives of number —

Examples:
(a) He was an old man.  
     (old — Adjective of Quality)
(b) Some boys are coming today.  
     (some — Adjective of Quantity)
(c) Some water might be there.  
     (some — Pronoun,  
     great — Adjective of Quality)
(d) Some are born great.

1. All men must die.
2. Some boys are playing.
3. I have some milk.
4. Some are ill.
5. There are six boys in the class.
6. He asked me several questions.
7. He was the third man.
8. The poor man had no money.
9. There were no horses there.
10. Many persons have not much money.
11. I did not take any tea.
12. I have enough books, but not enough time.
13. He has little knowledge.
14. Many of them were foolish.
15. One must not praise oneself.
16. Each of us has one mouth and two ears.
17. All is mortal.
18. The rich man had a lot of horses.
19. He had a lot of gold.
20. Few cats like cold water.

4. Demonstrative Adjectives

जिस Adjective का प्रयोग व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं को सूचित, हंगित या
निर्देशित करने के लिए किया जाता है, उसे Demonstrative Adjective कहा
जाता है।

* The adjective used to point out some person or thing is
called a demonstrative adjective.

This, That, These, Those and Such भुख्य Demonstrative
Adjectives हैं। आगे दिए गए वाक्यों में इनके प्रयोग को देखें —
This man will guide you.
I did not like that woman.
These/Those pens are mine.
I hate such things.

Note: जब This, That, These, Those और Such के साथ कोई Noun प्रयुक्त नहीं रहता, तब ये Demonstrative Pronouns कहलाते हैं। जैसे, इन वाक्यों में This, That, These, Those और Such Demonstrative Pronouns हैं —
This/That is Ram.
These/Those are cats.
Such was his reply.

5. Possessive Adjectives

Possessive Adjectives से अधिकार या संबंध का भाव व्यक्त होता है।

* Possessive adjectives show possession or relation.

my, our, your, his, her, its और their Possessive Adjectives हैं। इन वाक्यों में इनके प्रयोग को देखें —
This is my/your/our/his/her/their school.
Its colour is black.
My mother is ill.

Note: his का प्रयोग Pronoun के रूप में भी होता है, किंतु इस स्थिति में इसके साथ कोई Noun प्रयुक्त नहीं रहता। जैसे —
This is his. This book is his.

6. Distributive Adjectives

जब each, every, either और neither के ठीक बाद कोई Noun प्रयुक्त रहता है, तब इन्हें Distributive Adjectives कहा जाता है।

* Each, every, either and neither are called distributive adjectives when they are followed by a noun.

इन वाक्यों में each, every, either और neither का प्रयोग Distributive Adjective के रूप में हुआ है —
Each boy had a pen.
Every man has his own duty.
Either pen will do.
Neither way was safe.

Note: जब each, either और neither के साथ कोई Noun प्रयुक्त नहीं रहता, तब इन्हें Distributive Pronouns कहा जाता है। जैसे — इन वाक्यों में each, either और neither Distributive Pronoun के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुए हैं —
Each of the boys got a prize.
Each took it in turn.
Either of you can do.
Neither of them won the match.

7. Interrogative Adjectives

वह what, which और whose किसी संज्ञा के साथ प्रयुक्त होकर प्रश्न किए जाने के काम आते हैं, तब इन्हें Interrogative Adjectives कहा जाता है।
* What, which and whose are called interrogative adjectives when they are used with nouns to ask questions.

इन वाक्यों में what, which और whose Interrogative Adjective के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुए हैं—
What question did the teacher ask?
Which box is yours?
Whose book is this?

Note: जैसा कि आप पहले देख चुके हैं, what, which और whose का प्रयोग Relative Pronoun और Interrogative Pronoun के रूप में भी होता है। परंतु इस स्थिति में इनके साथ कोई Noun प्रयुक्त ना होता।

8. Proper Adjectives

Proper Nouns से बने Adjectives को Proper Adjectives कहते हैं।
* Adjectives made from proper nouns are called proper adjectives.

इन वाक्यों को देखें—
He is an Indian student.
Indian farmers are honest.
American English is different from British English.
Do you like the European culture?

इन वाक्यों में आए, शब्द Indian, American, British और European Proper Adjectives हैं। ये Proper Nouns India, America, Britain और Europe से बने हैं।

9. Emphasizing Adjectives

Own, very, same, very same, इत्यादि ऐसे Adjectives हैं जो किसी Noun के पहले प्रयुक्त होकर उस Noun पर बल (emphasis) देते हैं। ऐसे Adjectives Emphasizing Adjectives कहलाते हैं।
* Own, very, same, very same, etc are such adjectives as are used to convey emphasis on the nouns that follow them. Such adjectives are called emphasizing adjectives.

I saw them with my own eyes.  
This is the very book I wanted.  
This is the same book I wanted.  
He lived in the very same house for ten years.

10. Exclamatory Adjectives

जब what का प्रयोग Adjective की तरह किसी Exclamatory Sentence में होता है, तब इसे Exclamatory Adjective कहा जाता है।

* ‘What’ is called an exclamatory adjective when it is used as an adjective in an exclamatory sentence.

इन वाक्यों में What का प्रयोग Exclamatory Adjective के रूप में किया गया है —

What folly!
What an idea!
What a piece of work is man!

EXERCISE 9

Direction: Pick out all the adjectives in the following sentences, and say to which class each of them belongs —

Examples:

This book is yours.  
Which way shall we go?

1. Those books are hers.  
2. Those are her books.  
3. What is this?
4. Each boy has a pen.
5. Each of them got a prize.
6. Either of you can do this work.
7. We should love every man and woman.
8. What colour do you like?
9. Whose books are those?
10. Which is your pen?
11. He is an Indian.
12. He is an Indian farmer.
14. This is the very pen I wanted.
15. I have been using the same pen for two months.
16. What a man!
17. What folly!
18. I don't like its colour.
19. What is good to me?
20. I have found the book which I had lost.

**EXERCISE 10**

*Direction: Encircle all the adjectives used in these sentences—*

*Examples:*

(a) Which **boy** won **that** prize?
(b) The **second** man was very **strong**.
(c) The **poor** man had **little** money.

1. These pens are old.
2. Those were beautiful eyes.
3. Each man had some water to drink.
4. Each of them had six horses.
5. Few cats like cold water.
6. The first man was asked several questions.
7. All work is done.
8. What time is it?
9. Every man has his duties.
10. Which pen did you buy?
11. Whose are these books?
12. Whose horses are better than my horses?
13. I have a lot of money.
14. The fifth boy is very clever.
15. No boy has red shoes.
16. Some have not come yet.
17. This is a Chinese watch.
18. This is the very car I want.
19. He was killed in his own house.
20. What a fall!
5. Verbs

Ram is weeping. He had a car.
The boys laugh. She has two sons.
He was beaten. Mohan is ill.

इन वाक्यों में आए शब्द is weeping, laugh, was beaten, had, has और is पर विचार करें। इनमें से प्रथम सीम से कार्य-व्यापार का बोध होता है। had/has से अधिकार/संबंध तथा is से अवस्था का बोध होता है। ऐसे शब्दों को हम Grammar की भाषा में Verbs कहते हैं। वाक्य-निर्माण में इनका विशेष महत्व है।

Definition: Verb वह शब्द है, जिससे किसी के कार्य-व्यापार, अधिकार, संबंध या अवस्था का बोध होता है।

* A verb is a word which denotes an action, possession, relation or a state of being.

* A verb is a word used to tell or assert something about some person or thing.

Examples: laugh, eat, go, run, play, am, is, are, can, could, shall, will, etc.

कुछ और Sentences लें और उनमें Verb के प्रयोग को देखें —

Action:

Children play. (play — verb)
The man was walking. (was walking — verb)
The clock strikes. (strikes — verb)
I was taught. (was taught — verb)
He will come. (will come — verb)

Relation/Possession:

I have a car. (have — verb)
The cow has two eyes. (has — verb)
A king had three queens. (had — verb)
The poor man has no money. (has — verb)

State of Being:

Sita is tall. (is — verb)
They are happy. (are — verb)
He was a poor man. (was — verb)
KINDS OF THE VERB

बाक्यों में प्रयोग के आधार पर Verbs को दो वर्गों में बाँटा गया है —

1. Main Verb (प्रमुख क्रिया)
2. Helping Verb (सहायक क्रिया)

1. Main Verb: जो क्रिया किसी वाक्य में अकेले या सहायक क्रिया के साथ आती है, वह Main Verb कहलाती है।

* The verbs used alone or together with helping verbs are called main verbs.

इन वाक्यों में मोटे अकरों में छपे शब्द Main Verbs हैं —
(a) I am a boy.  (c) I love her.
(b) I am reading.  (d) He will do it.

2. Helping Verb: जो क्रिया tense, voice, mood इत्यादि के निर्माण में प्रथम क्रिया की सहायता करती है, वह Helping Verb कहलाती है।

* A helping verb is one which helps the main verb to form a tense, voice, mood, etc.

इन वाक्यों में मोटे अकरों में छपे शब्द Helping Verbs हैं —
(a) I am reading.  (c) He will go.
(b) My brother has come.  (d) You should do this.

निम्नलिखित Auxiliary Verbs हैं। इनका प्रयोग Helping Verb के रूप में होता है —

am, is, are, was, were, do, does, did, have, has, had, shall, will, can, could, may, might, must, ought, should, would, need, dare, used to.

इन Auxiliary Verbs में से am, is, are, was, were, have, has, had, do, does, did, need और dare ऐसे Verbs हैं जो कभी Main Verb की तरह प्रयुक्त होते हैं तो कभी Helping Verb की तरह, जैसे —
(a) He is ready.  (is—main verb)
(b) He is going.  (is—helping verb)
(c) Did he come?  (did—helping verb)
(d) He did this.  (did—main verb)

Note 1. यदि किसी वाक्य में एक ही क्रिया हो, तो वह क्रिया Main Verb कहलाएगी। जैसे —
(a) I have a dog.  (have—main verb)
(b) He is a boy.  (is—main verb)
Note 2: यदि किसी वाक्य में दो या दो से अधिक Verbs एक साथ प्रयुक्त हों, तो सबसे अंत में आनेवाला verb Main Verb कहलाएगा और अन्य verbs Helping Verbs कहलाएंगे। जैसे—

(a) I have been reading.  (have — helping verb,
been — helping verb,
reading — main verb)

(b) I have been a teacher. (have — helping verb,
been — main verb)

EXERCISE 11

Direction: Pick out the verbs in these sentences and say whether they are main verbs or helping verbs—

Examples:

(a) I am a boy.  (am — main verb)

(b) I am reading. (am — helping verb,
reading — main verb)

(c) Did he go? (did — helping verb,
go — main verb)

(d) Who did it? (did — main verb)

(e) We shall have been working for ten days. (shall — helping verb,
have — helping verb,
been — helping verb,
working — main verb)

1. He reads.
2. He is reading.
3. He is a student.
4. Are you a doctor?
5. Are you coming today?
6. He can do.
7. You should help me.
8. What could be done?
9. May I come in?
10. He does not know.
11. She had been sleeping.
12. She had been a dancer.
13. She had no money.
14. They must be working there.
15. They must be thieves.
16. I shall have been playing.
17. I shall have been a teacher.
18. I shall have no work.
19. We shall be leaders.
20. They do not do any work.

OBJECT OF THE VERB

कर्ता के अतिरिक्त क्रिया का फल जिस शब्द या शब्द-समूह पर पड़ता है, उसे हम उस क्रिया का Object कहते हैं। Object प्रायः क्रिया के तुरंत बाद आता है और यह कोई Noun/Pronoun/Noun Phrase/Noun Clause होता है। Verb के साथ What/Whom लगाकर प्रश्न करने पर जो उत्तर मिलता है वही उस Verb का Object होता है। अगर कोई उत्तर नहीं मिले तो
EXERCISE 12

Direction: Pick out the objects of the verbs in these sentences—

Examples:
(a) He is reading a book. (Ans. — a book)
(b) The teacher taught English. (Ans. — English)
(c) I love my father and mother. (Ans. — my father and mother)
(d) Why did he beat you? (Ans. — you)
(e) He was singing a song in the room. (Ans. — a song)
(f) Birds sing in the trees. (Ans. — no object)
(g) The teacher taught us English. (Ans. — us, English)

1. My mother loves me.
2. I love my mother.
3. Do you know English?
4. I shall solve the problem.
5. My father bought me a pen.
6. He did the work.
7. Kindly give me the pen.
8. He gave Ram a book.
9. The dog can run fast.
10. Birds fly in the sky.
11. He reads in this school.
12. The children are flying kites.
13. He reads English and Hindi.
14. They play cricket in the field.
15. The boy cut his hand with a knife.
16. I don’t like that naughty boy.
17. I love the students of this school.
18. Bring a glass of water.
19. They are cutting the old trees.
20. They make these types of furniture.

**TRANSITIVE & INTRANSITIVE VERBS**

Main Verb की दो भागों में बांटा गया है —

1. Transitive Verb (सकर्मक क्रिया)
2. Intransitive Verb (असकर्मक क्रिया)

**1. Transitive Verb:** जिस क्रिया के बाद कर्म (object) का प्रयोग हुआ हो, उस क्रिया को Transitive Verb कहेंगे।

* The verb used with an object is called a transitive verb.

इन वाक्यों को देखें —

1. Ram eats rice.
2. I love you.
3. He has helped my brother.
4. I know this.
5. My brother has read the book.
6. I like these beautiful flowers.

इन वाक्यों में rice, you, my brother, this, the book और these beautiful flowers Objects (कर्म) हैं। अतः इनके पहले प्रयुक्त Verbs eats, love, helped, know, read और like Transitive Verbs कहलाएँगे।

**2. Intransitive Verb:** जिस क्रिया के बाद कर्म (object) का प्रयोग नहीं हुआ हो, उस क्रिया को Intransitive Verb कहेंगे।

* The verb used without an object is called an intransitive verb.
Indian verbs do not take objects.

**1.** I eat.
2. I go to school.
3. Ram walks in the field.
4. I sleep.
5. He gets up at five o'clock.
6. He ran fast.

Indian verbs do not have objects, whereas English verbs do. For example, in English, verbs like eat, go, walk, sleep, get up, and run do not take objects.

**SOME SPECIAL NOTES**

1. Few verbs like go, come, sit, sleep, die, etc., do not take objects in Indian English.
2. Many verbs like eat, beat, read, etc., do take objects in Indian English.

**Ex:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intransitive Verb</th>
<th>Transitive Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I eat.</td>
<td>I eat a mango.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She reads.</td>
<td>She reads a book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The bell rang loudly.</td>
<td>The peon rang the bell.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birds fly in the sky.</td>
<td>He is flying a kite.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He speaks too loudly.</td>
<td>I speak the truth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birds sing in the trees.</td>
<td>I sang a song.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The glass broke.</td>
<td>My son broke the glass.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXERCISE 13**

Direction: Pick out the main verbs in these sentences and say whether they are transitive or intransitive.

**Examples:**

(a) He eats. (eats — intransitive)
(b) He eats slowly. (eats — intransitive)
(c) He eats rice. (eats — transitive)

1. I go to school everyday.
2. They are coming soon.
3. He reads the book.
4. He reads.
5. He reads slowly and carefully.
6. He reads in the fifth class.
7. My father teaches me English.
8. My father teaches in the morning.
9. Do you walk in the morning?
11. They are flying kites.
12. We eat three times a day.
13. We eat bread and rice.
15. Do you know his name?
16. He knows everything.
17. He lives in a village.
18. What is he doing in the field?
19. I request you to help me.
20. Please do not beat these poor beggars.
6. Adverbs

इन वाक्यों को देखें —

The child runs slowly. He is too old.
She writes beautifully. Ram is very kind.
They fought bravely. She walked very slowly.

इन वाक्यों में आए शब्द slowly, beautifully, bravely, too और very पर विचार करें। ये क्रमशः runs (verb), writes (verb), fought (verb), old (adj.) तथा kind (adj.) & slowly (adv.) की विशेषता बता रहे हैं। ये अभीष्ट Verb/Adjective/Adverb के अर्थ को और अधिक स्पष्ट कर रहे हैं। ऐसे शब्दों को हम Grammar की भाषा में Adverbs कहते हैं।

Definition: Adverb वह शब्द है, जो किसी Verb, Adjective या दूसरे Adverb की विशेषता बताता है।

* An adverb qualifies a verb, an adjective or another adverb.
* An adverb is a word used to add something to the meaning of a verb, an adjective or another adverb.

Examples: slowly, carefully, beautifully, clearly, quickly, loudly, sadly, hardly, very, too, yesterday, today, soon, here, there, etc.

KINDS OF THE ADVERB

Adverb के निम्नलिखित मुख्य भेद हैं —

1. Adverbs of Time (कालवाचक विशेषण)
2. Adverbs of Frequency (आवृत्तिवाचक विशेषण)
3. Adverbs of Manner (रीतिवाचक विशेषण)
4. Adverbs of Place (स्थानवाचक विशेषण)
5. Adverbs of Degree (परिमाणवाचक विशेषण)
6. Interrogative Adverbs (प्रश्नवाचक विशेषण)
7. Adverbs of Negation and Affirmation (नकारात्मक एवं स्वीकारात्मक विशेषण)
8. Adverbs of Reason (कारणवाचक विशेषण)
9. Relative Adverbs (संबंधवाचक विशेषण)

1. Adverbs of Time: Adverbs of Time से क्रिया के संपादन के समय का बोध होता है।
* Adverbs of time tell the time of an action.

* Examples: today, yesterday, tomorrow, now, then, soon, late, lately, just, ago, before, immediately, etc.

* Note: Verb के साथ जब (कब) लगाकर प्रश्न करने पर जो शब्द उत्तर के रूप में आता है, वह Adverb of Time कहलाता है। जैसे —

(a) He came yesterday.
   Came when (कब आया) ? ~ yesterday

(b) He will come soon.
   Will come when (कब आएगा) ? ~ soon

* सन्यत: yesterday और soon Adverbs of Time हैं।

2. Adverbs of Frequency: Adverbs of Frequency से बोध होता है कि किसी कार्य का संपादन ‘कितनी बार’ हुआ, होता है या होगा।

* Adverbs of frequency tell how often or how frequently an action is done.

* Examples: never, always, once, twice, daily, regularly, again, seldom (बिल्कुल नहीं), occasionally (कभी-कभी, समय समय पर), etc.

* Note: किया के साथ how often (कितनी बार) लगाकर प्रश्न करने पर जो शब्द उत्तर के रूप में आता है, वह Adverb of Frequency कहलाता है। जैसे —

(a) He came here twice.
   Came how often (कितनी बार आया) ? ~ twice

(b) I have always helped you.
   Helped how often (कितनी बार मदद की है) ? ~ always

* सन्यत: twice और always Adverbs of Frequency हैं।

3. Adverbs of Manner: Adverbs of Manner से यह बोध होता है कि किया का संपादन किस ढंग से या कैसे होता है।

* Adverbs of manner tell how or in what manner an action is done.

* Examples: slowly, carefully, beautifully, sadly, bravely, loudly, quickly, fast (तेजी से), hard (कड़ी से), well (अच्छी तरह से), etc.

* Note: Verb के साथ how (किसे) लगाकर प्रश्न करने पर जो शब्द उत्तर के रूप में आता है, वह Adverb of Manner कहलाता है। जैसे —

(a) She writes beautifully.
   Writes how (कैसे लिखती है) ? ~ beautifully

(b) He runs fast.
   Runs how (कैसे दौड़ता है) ? ~ fast

* सन्यत: beautifully और fast Adverbs of Manner हैं।
4. Adverbs of Place: Adverbs of Place से कार्य के संपादन के स्थान का बोध होता है।

* Adverbs of place tell where or at what place an action is done.

Examples: here, there, everywhere, up, down, outside, within, near, below, away, etc.

Note: Verb के साथ where (कहाँ) लगाकर प्रश्न करने पर जो शब्द उत्तर के रूप में आता है, वह Adverb of Place कहलाता है। जैसे —

(a) Go there.
   Go where (कहाँ जाओ) ? ~ there

(b) I shall wait for you outside.
   Wait where (कहाँ इंतजार करेंगा) ? ~ outside

स्पष्टतः there और outside Adverbs of Place हैं।

5. Adverbs of Degree: Adverbs of Degree से यह बोध होता है कि किसी Action, Adjective या Adverb की तीव्रता किस हद तक या कितनी है।

* Adverbs of degree indicate the degree of intensity of an action or an adjective or an adverb.

Examples: very, much, enough, too, quite (बिलकुल, नितांत), hardly (मुश्किल से), exactly (दीक-दीक), nearly (लगभग, करीब-करीब), almost (लगभग, करीब-करीब), etc.

Note: Verb के साथ how much/to what degree/to what extent (कितना/कितनी) लगाकर प्रश्न करने पर जो शब्द उत्तर के रूप में आता है, वह Adverb of Degree कहलाता है। जैसे —

(a) Sita is very happy.
   Happy how much (कितना खुश) ? ~ very (बहुत)

(b) She hardly knows me.
   Knows to what extent (कितना जानती है) ? ~ hardly
   (मुश्किल से, नहीं के बराबर)

स्पष्टतः very और hardly Adverbs of Degree हैं।

6. Interrogative Adverbs: when, where; how, why, how long, how much, how often, how many, इत्यादि का प्रयोग जब प्रश्न करने में किया जाता है, तब इन्हें Interrogative Adverbs कहते हैं।

* When, where, how, why, how long, how much, how often, how many, etc are called interrogative adverbs when they are used in asking questions.
7. Adverbs of Negation and Affirmation: किसी प्रश्न के स्वीकारात्मक जवाब के लिए yes, surely, certainly (निश्चित रूप से) इत्यादि का प्रयोग करते हैं। इन्हें Adverbs of Affirmation कहते हैं। पुनः, नकारात्मक जवाब के लिए no, not, never इत्यादि का प्रयोग करते हैं। इन्हें Adverbs of Negation कहते हैं।

8. Adverbs of Reason: Adverbs of reason tell the reason of the action.

Examples: therefore, hence, thus, so, etc.
He, therefore, left school.
Thus, she became angry.

9. Relative Adverbs: Relative Adverbs अपने बाद आनेवाले Verbs को modify करते हैं और साथ ही दो वाक्यों को एक साथ जोड़ते हैं।

* Relative adverbs modify the verbs following them and at the same time join two sentences together.

Note: Relative adverbs और Interrogative Adverbs दोनों के एक ही रूप हैं, लेकिन जहाँ Interrogative Adverbs का प्रयोग प्रश्न किए जाने में किया जाता है, वहाँ Relative Adverbs का प्रयोग दो वाक्यों को जोड़ने में किया जाता है।

Examples of Relative Adverbs: where, how, when, why, how long, how much, how many, etc.
This is the house where he lived.
Let me know when you will come.
I don’t know the reason why he left the place.
Do you know how he will act.
I don’t know how much he has.

EXERCISE 14

Direction: Encircle the adverbs in these sentences—

Examples:

(a) He will come (tomorrow)

(b) He (never) comes late.

1. What are you doing today?
2. I always speak the truth.
3. The child runs slowly.
4. There was water everywhere.
5. She is very beautiful.
6. Where is the book?
7. He does not write well.
8. He, therefore, left school.
9. I shall come soon.
10. Yesterday he came here.
11. I never go there.
12. You should take exercise regularly.
13. He came here twice.
14. She writes beautifully.
15. You should work hard.
16. How will you stay outside?
17. Stand up on the bench.
18. The tea is too hot.
19. Yes, I am ready.
20. She can hardly walk.

**EXERCISE 15**

*Direction: Encircle the adverbs in these sentences—*

1. Why do you not come here regularly?
2. God is everywhere.
3. Do it now.
4. It is quite wrong.
5. I do not know him much.
6. He knows me very well.
7. This is the place where he was caught.
8. How are you today?
9. He comes here daily.
10. That day he arrived late.
11. Come in.
12. Is Mr Chopra within?
13. My brother is out.
14. He can read clearly.
15. Slowly and sadly he spoke to me.
16. They fought bravely.
17. I am fully satisfied.
18. The patient is no better today.
19. This is the house where he lived.
20. Go back.
7. Prepositions

इन वाक्यों को देखें—

(a) There is a cat on the table.
(b) I am writing with a pen.
(c) He is going to him.

इन वाक्यों में आए शब्द on, with और to पर विचार करें। ये Noun/Pronoun के पहले प्रयुक्त हुए हैं और इनमें से प्रत्येक उक्त Noun/Pronoun का जो संबंध वाक्य के दूसरे शब्द या शब्दों से है, उसे दर्शाता है। 'on' cat और table के बीच के संबंध को दर्शाता है — cat, table के ऊपर है और उससे सटी हुई है। इसी प्रकार 'with' am writing और pen के बीच के संबंध को दर्शाता है — pen वह साथ है, जिससे लिखने का कार्य हो रहा है। पुनः 'to' is going और him के बीच के संबंध को दर्शाता है — उसकी ओर जाने का कार्य हो रहा है। ऐसे शब्दों को Grammar की भाषा में Prepositions कहते हैं।

Definition: Preposition वह शब्द है जो किसी Noun या Pronoun के पहले आकर उस Noun या Pronoun का संबंध वाक्य में प्रयुक्त किसी अन्य शब्द या शब्दों से कराता है।

* A preposition is a word placed before a noun or a pronoun to show its relation to some other word in the sentence.

* A preposition is a word placed before a noun or a pronoun to show in what relation the person or thing denoted by it stands in regard to something else.

Some Important Prepositions:

in (में), into (में), on (पर), at (में, पर), to (की ओर), with (के साथ), without (के बिना), of (का, की, के), among (के बीच), between (के बीच), under (नीचे), over (के ऊपर), below (के नीचे), near (के पास), after (के बाद), before (के पहले), for (के लिए), up (ऊपर), since (में), from (में), by (के द्वारा), behind (के पीछे), towards (की तरफ), about (के बारे में), etc.

Note 1. Preposition प्रयोग: Noun/Pronoun/Noun Equivalent के पहले आता है। परंतु कुछ परिस्थितियों में इसका प्रयोग Sentence/Clause के अंत में होता है या हो सकता है। जैसे —

What are you looking at?
Who is she weeping for?
I know the house she lives in.
This is the room I slept in.
I need something to write with.
She likes being looked at.
Who is it for?

**Note 2.** एक ही word प्रयोग के हिसाब से किसी वाक्य में Preposition हो सकता है तो किसी दूसरे वाक्य में अन्य Part of Speech, जैसे —

- He is in the room. (in — preposition)
- Come in. (in — adverb)
- I have not seen this before. (before — adverb)
- He stood before the gate. (before — preposition)
- The train had started before we reached the station. (before — conjunction)

ईसी परिस्थिति में आपको यह समझना है कि अभीष्ट word Preposition है या नहीं। इसके लिए आप याद रखें कि Preposition किसी Noun/ Pronoun तथा वाक्य के दूसरे word/words के बीच संबंध जाहिर करता है, जबकि अन्य Parts of Speech ऐसा नहीं करते हैं।

अब आपको विभिन्न Prepositions के कुछ महत्वपूर्ण प्रयोग को समझना और जानना है जिनकी चर्चा इसी पुस्तक में आगे ‘Uses of Prepositions’ में की जाएगी।

**EXERCISE 16**

*Direction: Encircle the prepositions used in these sentences.*

*Examples:*

(a) The book is [on] the table.
(b) Let us move [on].

1. He is going to school.
2. I am without a pen.
3. Which class do you read in?
4. Ram and Shyam will do it.
5. If you come I shall help you.
6. The dog fell into the river.
7. This is from Ravi.
8. I have no money for you.
9. He came at 4 o'clock.
10. My father came by bus.
11. The fan is over my head.
12. Wait for me.
13. He is between Ravi and Mohan.
14. He has been absent since January.
15. May I come in?
16. I could not come before.
17. The poor man was standing before the palace.
18. I have not seen him before.
19. He has been waiting since morning.
20. The heavens are above.
8. Conjunctions

इन वाक्यों को ध्यान से देखें —
(a) Ram and Shyam are brothers.
(b) Early to bed and early to rise is a good habit.
(c) You will pass if you work hard.
(d) Rita is simple but Geeta is clever.

इन वाक्यों में आए शब्द and, if और but पर विचार करें। ये दो words/ phrasing/clauses/sentences को जोड़ने का काम कर रहे हैं। पुनः यहाँ ध्यान देनेवाली बात यह है कि ये सिर्फ जोड़ने का काम कर रहे हैं, जोड़ने के अलावा और कुछ नहीं कर रहे हैं। ऐसे connecting words को Grammar की भाषा में Conjunctions कहते हैं।

Definition: Conjunction वह शब्द है, जो शब्दों, शब्द-समूहों, वाक्यांशों, उपवाक्यों या वाक्यों को जोड़ता है।

* A conjunction is a word used to join words, phrases, clauses or sentences together.

Examples: and, but, or, because, therefore, although, though, yet, still, as well as, otherwise, when, if, after, since, before, as, unless, while, as if, whether, where, so, that, until, till, either ...... or, neither .... nor, not only .... but also, both ... and, etc.

Note: Relative Pronouns, Relative Adverbs तथा Prepositions भी connecting words हैं। ऐसे अनेक connecting words हैं जिनका प्रयोग विभिन्न वाक्यों में Relative Pronoun, Relative Adverb या Preposition के स्थान में होता है, साथ ही Pure Conjunction के स्थान में भी होता है। इस परंपरा में आपको यह जानना है कि अपनी मुख्य Conjunction है या नहीं। इस संदर्भ में आप इतना ध्यान रखें कि Conjunction सिर्फ जोड़ने का काम करता है, इसके अलावा अन्य कोई काम नहीं करता है, जबकि Relative Pronoun दो clauses को जोड़ने के साथ-साथ अपने पूर्व आए Noun/Pronoun का संबंध अपने बाद आनेवाले clause से जोड़ता है। Relative Adverb दो clauses को जोड़ने के साथ-साथ अपने बाद आनेवाले clause के verb को modify करता है तथा Preposition जिस Noun/Noun Equivalent के पहले प्रयुक्त रहता है, उसका संबंध वाक्य के किसी दूसरे शब्द या शब्दों से करता है।

इस प्रकार यह स्पष्ट है कि Conjunction सिर्फ जोड़ने का काम करता है जबकि अन्य Connecting words जोड़ने के अलावा अन्य कार्य भी करते हैं। इन्हें ध्यान से देखें और समझें —

1. This is the book that I bought yesterday. (that — relative pronoun)
2. I know that he was innocent. 
3. This is the house where he lived. (where — relative adverb)
4. He found the watch where he had left it. (where — conjunction)
5. I have been busy since Monday. (since — preposition)
6. We shall go since you desire it. (since — conjunction)

**Note:** एक ही शब्द किसी वाक्य में Conjunction के रूप में प्रयुक्त हो सकता है तो दूसरे वाक्य में अन्य Part of Speech के रूप में, जैसे —

1. The train had started before we reached the station. (before — conjunction)
2. He stood before the gate. (before — preposition)
3. I have not seen this before. (before — adverb)
4. I will not let you go except you give me some money. (except — conjunction)
5. If we except Hari, all are to be blamed. (except — verb)

**KINDS OF THE CONJUNCTION**

Conjunction मुख्यतः दो प्रकार के होते हैं —

(a) Co-ordinating Conjunction  
(b) Subordinating Conjunction  

(a) **Co-ordinating Conjunction:** एक ही स्तर के दो items को जोड़ने वाला Conjunction, Co-ordinating Conjunction कहलाता है।

* The conjunction which joins two items of equal rank is called a co-ordinating conjunction.

**Examples:** and, but, or, also, yet, still, too, as well as, otherwise, either ... or, neither ... nor, not only ... but also, both ... and ...

इन वाक्यों में मोटे अश्लोगों में छपे हुए शब्द Co-ordinating Conjunctions हैं —

Ram and Shyam are friends.
Give me a pen or a pencil.
Ram is poor but honest.

**Either Ram or Geeta is to be blamed.**
He knows both Hindi and English.

Geeta is dancing and Reeta is singing.

* Explanation: उपर्युक्त वाक्यों में Ram और Shyam एक ही स्तर (Noun & Noun) के दो शब्द हैं। अतः इन्हें जोड़ने वाला ‘and’ Co-ordinating Conjunction कहलाएगा। पुनः आगे के चार वाक्यों में भी जिन दो items को अलग अलग जोड़ा गया है वे क्रमशः Noun & Noun,
Conjunctions

Adjective & Adjective, Noun & Noun तथा Noun & Noun हैं। सबसे अंत में ‘and’ दो sentences को जोड़ता है जो एक ही स्तर के हैं। अतः उपयुक्त सभी Conjunctions Co-ordinating Conjunctions हैं।

(b) Subordinating Conjunction: जो Conjunction Subordinate Clause को Principal Clause से जोड़ता है, वह Subordinating Conjunction कहलाता है।

* The conjunction which joins a subordinate clause to a principal clause is called a subordinating conjunction.

Examples: when, if, that, whether, after, before, because, unless, until, till, so, since, while, where, etc.

इन वाक्यों में bold words Subordinating Conjunctions हैं—

He said that he was absent.
You will pass if you work hard.
I like him because he is honest.

[Explanation: Subordinate Clause की Dependent Clause भी कहते हैं। इसका अर्थ होता है — आश्रित उपवाक्य। ऐसा Clause जो अपना अर्थ पूरा करने के लिए वाक्य के दूसरे मार्ग पर निर्भर हो, वह Subordinate Clause कहलाता है तथा अभीष्ट दूसरा मार्ग Principal Clause कहलाता है। ऊपर दिए गए वाक्यों में that, if और because से जो Clauses शुरू हुए हैं, वे Subordinate Clauses हैं। अतः that, if और because Subordinating Conjunctions कहलाएँगे।]

EXERCISE 17

Direction: Pick out the conjunctions in these sentences and say what kind of conjunction they are—

Examples:

(a) Two and two makes four. (and—co-ordinating conjunction)
(b) Mohan is a boy and Sita is a girl.  
   (and — co-ordinating conjunction)
(c) Do or die.  
   (or — co-ordinating conjunction)
(d) Either he is mad or he is foolish.  
   (either … or — co-ordinating conjunction)
(e) I shall help him if he comes to me.  
   (if — subordinating conjunction)
(f) He stood before the gate.  
   (no conjunction)
(g) This is the place where he lives.  
   (no conjunction)
1. Both Ram and Shyam are poor.
2. Give me a pen or a pencil.
3. She was playing and dancing.
4. My friend is poor but honest.
5. Give me either tea or coffee.
6. I like neither him nor her.
7. Ram is here but Geeta is there.
8. Ram as well as his sons is laborious.
9. Don’t go before I come.
10. If you work hard you will pass.
11. He is poor because he has no money.
12. I know that he will not come.
13. He has been sleeping since morning.
14. We shall go since you desire it.
15. Stay till Monday.
16. We shall stay here till he returns.
17. This is the place where he was killed.
18. I know where he was killed.
19. This is the book that I bought yesterday.
20. He said that he could do.
9. Interjections

इन वाक्यों को ध्यान से देखें —
Alas! The cat is dead.
Oh! I have burnt my fingers.
Ah! Have they gone?
Hurrah! We have won the match.
Hello! What are you doing here?
Bravo! Go on.

ऊपर आए शब्द Alas, Oh, Ah, Hurrah, Hello और Bravo पर विचार करें। Alas और Oh से अन्यथिक दुख, Ah से तीव्र निराशा तथा Hurrah/Hello/Bravo से अत्यधिक उत्साह का बोध होता है। स्पष्टतः ये शब्द मन के पीछे उठ रहे भावों की तीव्र अभिव्यक्ति के सूचक हैं, जो अचानक हमारे मुख से निकल पड़ते हैं। ऐसे शब्दों को Grammar की मापा में Interjections कहते हैं।

Definition: Interjection वह शब्द है, जिससे आक्रोश प्रसन्नता, दुख, आश्चर्य या मन का कोई अन्य भाव व्यक्त होता है।

* An interjection is a word which expresses some sudden feeling or emotion.

Examples: Alas, Oh, Ah, Hurrah, Hello, Bravo, Hush, etc.

EXERCISE 18

Direction: What part of speech is each of the words in these sentences?

N. = Noun  Pro. = Pronoun  V. = Verb
Conj. = Conjunction  Inter. = Interjection  Arti. = Article

Solved Examples:

(a) Ram is a very good boy.

(b) Sita and Geeta are going to Delhi.
   N. Conj. N. V. V. Prep. N.

(c) Oh! I have cut my finger.
   Inter. Pro. V. V. Adj. N.
1. He is my father.
2. Ram has a cat.
3. These are beautiful pens.
4. Who are you?
5. Each boy had a pen.
6. The poor girl had no money.
7. This book is mine.
8. She writes beautifully.
9. He will come today.
10. Where is Mala?
11. I am going to school.
12. Ram and Shyam know this.
13. Do or die.
14. May I come in?
15. Alas! My dog is dead.
16. Hurrah! I have won the match.
17. I know that she can't help me.
18. Ram is poor but honest.
19. You will pass if you work hard.
20. Stay till Sunday.
10. Number

मैं यहाँ Noun, Pronoun और Verb के Number (वचन) पर क्रमश: विचार करेंगे।

NUMBER OF THE NOUN

Noun के दो Number होते हैं —
1. Singular Number (एकवचन)
2. Plural Number (बहुवचन)

1. Singular Number: Singular Number से एक प्राणी या वस्तु का बोध होता है।
   * Singular number denotes one person or thing.
   * A noun that denotes one person or thing is said to be in the singular number.

Examples: cow, dog, cat, man, boy, car, pen, etc.

2. Plural Number: Plural Number एक से अधिक प्राणियों या वस्तुओं का बोध कराता है।
   * Plural number denotes more than one person or thing.
   * A noun that denotes more than one person or thing is said to be in the plural number.

Examples: cows, dogs, cats, men, boys, pens, cars, etc.

Note: Countable Nouns के Plural Forms होते हैं जबकि सामान्य अर्थ में Proper Nouns और Uncountable Nouns के Plural Forms नहीं होते।

Singular से Plural बनाने के नियम

1. Singular Noun के अंत में प्राय: ‘s’ जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है। जैसे —
   - boy — boys
   - pen — pens
   - cow — cows
   - cat — cats
   - ant — ants

   book — books
   table — tables
   horse — horses
   house — houses
   desk — desks

   tree — trees
   name — names
   school — schools
   animal — animals
   brother — brothers

2. जिस Singular Noun के अंत में ch (च), sh (श), ss (स्स), s (स) या x (एक्स) रहता है, उसमें ‘es’ जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है। जैसे —
bench — benches  bush — bushes  ass — asses
inch — inches  dish — dishes  bus — buses
curch — churches  fish — fishes  gas — gases
watch — watches  brush — brushes  tax — taxes
branch — branches  class — classes  box — boxes

[bush — बूध, dish — धाली, branch — बाँध, brush — कूड़ी, tax — तार]
Note: जब ch का उच्चारण ‘क’ होता है, तब मात्र ‘s’ जोड़ता है। जैसे —
stomach (स्टोमॅक) पेट — stomachs; monarch (मॉनर्क) राजा — monarchs.

3. जब Noun के अंत में y रहता है और y के पहले कोई Vowel, तब केवल ‘s’ जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है। जैसे —

boy (लड़का) — boys  way (रास्ता) — ways
toy (खिलाड़ी) — toys  play (खेल, नाटक) — plays
key (क्ली) — keys  monkey (बंदर) — monkeys
bay (बैय) — bays  donkey (गाय) — donkeys
ray (रेज) — rays  holiday (होली) — holidays
day (दिन) — days  essay (निबंध) — essays

4. जब Noun के अंत में y रहता है और y के पहले कोई Consonant, तब y को हटाकर, उसके बाद ले ies जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है। जैसे —

baby (बच्चा) — babies  body (शरीर) — bodies
fly (फ्लाई) — flies  lady (लड़की) — ladies
city (शहर) — cities  army (सेना) — armies
story (कहानी) — stories  country (देश) — countries
diary (दिवारी) — diaries  cry (चीखा) — cries

5. जब Noun के अंत में o रहता है और o के पहले कोई Consonant, तब ‘es’ जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है। जैसे —

hero (नायक) — heroes  tomato (टमाटर) — tomatoes
mango (आम) — mangoes  buffalo (बफल) — buffaloes
potato (आलू) — potatoes  mosquito (मक्कर) — mosquitoes

Some Exceptions: photo — photos, canto — cantos, piano — pianos.

6. जब Noun के अंत में o रहता है और o के पहले कोई Vowel, तब ‘s’ जोड़कर Plural बनाया जाता है। जैसे —

radio (रेडियो) — radios  bamboo (बाँस) — bamboos
folio (फोलिया) — folios  cuckoo (कॉक) — cuckoos

7. जब Noun के अंत में ‘f’ या ‘fe’ रहता है, तब Plural बनाने के लिए f/fe को v में बदलकर es जोड़ते हैं। जैसे —
wife (पत्नी) — wives
life (जीवन) — lives
knife (चापू) — knives
calf (बछड़ा) — calves
shelf (ताक) — shelves
half (आधा) — halves
wolf (मेडिया) — wolves
thief (चोर) — thieves
loaf (पावरोटी) — loaves
leaf (पत्ती) — leaves

Some Exceptions:
proof (सबूत) — proofs
roof (छत) — roofs
hoof (खुर) — hoofs
chief (प्रमुख) — chiefs
cliff (खड़ी चट्टान) — cliffs
safe (सिजारी) — safes
dwarf (बीना) — dwarfs
handkerchief — handkerchiefs

8. कुछ Nouns के आंतरिक Vowels को परिवर्तित कर Plural बनाया जाता है। जैसे —
man (आदमी) — men
tooth (दूत) — teeth
woman (ओरत) — women
mouse (चूहा) — mice
foot (फेर) — feet
goose (हंस) — geese

9. कुछ Nouns में ‘en’ लगाकर Plural बनाया जाता है। जैसे —
ox — oxen
child — children

10. Compound Nouns का Plural प्रय: उनके मुख्य शब्द को Plural बनाने से होता है। जैसे —
son-in-law (हामद) — sons-in-law
father-in-law (समुर) — fathers-in-law
daughter-in-law (पतोर) — daughters-in-law
brother-in-law (साला) — brothers-in-law
sister-in-law (साली) — sisters-in-law
stepson (सौतेला बेटा) — stepsons
grandson (पोता) — grandsons
grandfather (दादा) — grandfathers
maidservant (नैकरानी) — maidservants
boyfriend (प्रेमी, सखा) — boyfriends
girlfriend (प्रेमिका, सखी) — girlfriends
man-of-war (जंगी जहाज) — men-of-war
man-at-arms (सैनिक) — men-at-arms

11. कुछ Compound Nouns के दोनों parts को Plural बनाकर अभीष्ट शब्द के Plural बनाए जाते हैं। ऐसे Nouns के दोनों Parts की प्रधानता बराबर होती है।
manservant (नैकर) — menservants
woman-doctor (महिला डॉक्टर)    women-doctors
woman-student (छात्रा)        women-students
gentleman-farmer (पुरुष किसान)    gentlemen-farmers

12. कुछ Nouns के Singular और Plural Forms एक ही होते हैं।
    जैसे —
    sheep (भेड़), deer (हरिण), pice (पाइस-पैसा), police (पुलिस), innings (पाली), series (शूरुआत), etc.
    अत: आप लिख सकते हैं — one sheep, five sheep, two deer, etc.

13. कुछ Nouns का प्रयोग सिर्फ Plural Number में ही होता है।
    जैसे —
    alms (भिक्षा), athletics (खेल-कूद), riches (संपत्ति), scissors (कंची),
    spectacles (चश्मा), trousers (पाजामा), tongs (चिंगटा), cards (ताश),
    scales (पानी), thanks (धन्यवाद), ashes (राख), etc.

14. कुछ Nouns देखने में Singular लगते हैं, परंतु वास्तव में वे Plural Number में होते हैं।
    जैसे —
    children, people, public, etc.

15. कुछ Nouns का प्रयोग सिर्फ Singular Number में ही होता है।
    जैसे —
    poetry (काव्य), scenery (प्राकृतिक दृश्य), furniture (फर्नीचर), tea, coffee,
    money, music (संगीत), percentage (प्रतिशत), knowledge (ज्ञान),
    stationery (लेखन-सामग्री), information (खबर, सूचना), politics (राजनीति),
    mathematics (गणित), physics (भौतिकी), advice (सलाह), news (समाचार),
    billiards, etc.

EXERCISE 19

Direction: Give the plural form —

book, table, horse, tree, desk, bench, bus, dish, box, toy, monkey,
fly, lady, baby, hero, mango, radio, thief, knife, wolf, roof, man, foot,
woman, grandson, woman-doctor, sheep.

EXERCISE 20

Direction: Give the singular form —

heroes, bamboos, chiefs, diaries, wives, boxes, bodies, lives,
potatoes, flies, cities, knives, oxen, feet, taxes, geese, beliefs, keys,
wolves, classes, teeth, men-of-war, stepsons, calves, branches, shoes,
derer, bushes, thieves, children, churches, menservants, inches.
EXERCISE 21

Direction: Look at the box and answer the questions given below —

sheep, alms, poetry, trousers, scenery, furniture, oil, deer, tea, 
friendship, butter, mathematics, music, percentage, advice, 
police, coffee, gold, bread, ashes, money, love, series, scissors, 
flour, sugar, innings, scales, ink, spectacles, tongs, politics, milk, 
juice.

1. Pick out the nouns from the box which are always used in 
   the singular number.

2. Pick out the nouns from the box which are always used in 
   the plural number.

3. Pick out the nouns from the box which have same form in 
   both singular and plural numbers.

NUMBER OF THE PRONOUN

Nouns की तरह Pronouns भी Singular या Plural होते हैं। जिस 
Pronoun का संबंध एक प्राणी या वस्तु से हो, उसे Singular Number में 
होना समझा जाता है तथा जिस Pronoun का संबंध एक से अधिक प्राणियों 
या वस्तुओं से हो, उसे Plural Number में होना समझा जाता है।

(a) Pronouns in Singular Number:

   I, Me, Mine, Myself, He, Him, His, Himself, She, Her, Hers, 
   Himself, It, Itself, Yourself, This, That, Somebody, Nobody, Anybody, 
   Everybody, Someone, No one, Anyone, Everyone, Something, 
   Nothing, Anything, Each, Either, Neither, etc.

(b) Pronouns in Plural Number:

   We, Us, Ours, Ourselves, Yourselves, They, Them, Theirs, 
   Themselves, These, Those, Many, Both, etc.

(c) Pronouns जो Singular में भी प्रयुक्त होते हैं और Plural में भी—
   you, yours, all, some, none, who, whom, whose, which, what, etc.

NUMBER OF THE VERB

Verb का सीधा संबंध वाक्य के Subject से रहता है। Singular 
Subject के साथ Singular Verb तथा Plural Subject के साथ Plural 
Verb प्रयुक्त होता है। अतः आपके लिए यह जानना जरूरी है कि कौन Verb 
Singular Number में है और कौन Plural Number में।

Note: जब Verb में -s/es लग जाता है, तब वह Singular हो जाता है। यह 
नियम Noun के नियम का ठीक उलटा है। Noun में -s/es लगाकर हम उसे Plural 
बनाते हैं, पर Verb में -s/es लगाकर उसे Singular बनाते हैं।
Plural Verb       Singular Verb
    eat           eats
    go            goes
    laugh         laughs
    run           runs

अब इन्हें समझें और हमेशा ध्यान में रखें—

(a) Verbs in the Singular Number:
    am, is, was, has, does, goes, eats, laughs, etc.

(b) Verbs in the Plural Number:
    are, were, have, do, go, eat, run, jump, etc.

(c) Verbs जो Singular Number में भी प्रयुक्त होते हैं और Plural Number में भी—
    had, did, shall, should, will, would, can, could, may, might, must, ought, need, dare, used, Verbs in the Past Tense, Verbs in the Present/Past Participle Tense, etc.

**EXERCISE 22**

*Direction: Look at the box and answer the questions given below—*

| you, yourself, yourselves, hers, nobody, each, we, they, many, somebody, both, himself, am, are, have, has, do, did, had, goes, run, shall, will, must, can, eats, eating, went, does |

1. Pick out the singular pronouns and verbs from the box.
2. Pick out the plural pronouns and verbs from the box.
3. Pick out the pronouns and verbs from the box which have same form in both singular and plural numbers.
11. Gender

Noun और Pronoun के Gender (लिंग) होते हैं। हम यही Noun और Pronoun के Gender पर विचार करेंगे।

**GENDER OF THE NOUN**

English में Gender चार प्रकार के होते हैं —

1. **Masculine Gender** (पुंलिंग)
2. **Feminine Gender** (स्त्रीलिंग)
3. **Common Gender** (उभय लिंग)
4. **Neuter Gender** (नरुसक लिंग)

**1. Masculine Gender:** Masculine Gender से नर जाति का बोध होता है।

* The masculine gender denotes a male.

**Examples:** Ram, dog, man, father, bull, prince, actor, tiger, horse, hero, boy and others.

**2. Feminine Gender:** Feminine Gender से मादा जाति का बोध होता है।

* The feminine gender denotes a female.

**Examples:** Sita, woman, mother, cow, sister and others.

**3. Common Gender:** Common Gender से यह बोध होता है कि Noun या तो नर जाति का है या मादा जाति का।

* The common gender denotes that the noun is either a male or a female.

**Examples:** teacher कहने से शिक्षक या शिक्षिका का बोध होता है। friend कहने से boyfriend या girlfriend का बोध होता है। अतः teacher और friend से Common Gender का बोध होता है। Other Examples: child, doctor, thief (चोर या चोरती), parent (माता या पिता), cousin (चचा, कुंफेरा या ममेरा माई या बहन), person (औरत या मर्द), student (छात्र या छात्रा), infant (शिशु — नर या मादा), relative (संबंधी — स्त्री या पुरुष), bookseller (पुस्तक-विक्रेता — स्त्री या पुरुष), baby (बच्चा या बच्ची), servant (नैकर या नैकरनी), writer (लेखक या लेखिका), singer (गायक या गायिका), clerk (किरानी — पुरुष या स्त्री), bird (पक्षी — नर या मादा), deer (हिरण — नर या मादा), sheep (भेड़ — नर या मादा), elephant (हाथी — नर या मादा), fox (लोम्बडी — नर या मादा), author (लेखक या
4. Neuter Gender: Neuter Gender से यह बोध होता है कि Noun न तो नर जाति का है, न मादा जाति का।

* The neuter gender denotes that the noun is neither a male nor a female.

Examples: wood, oil, crow, ant, bench, school, book, pen, class, watch, honesty, army, etc.

Note 1. निर्जीव पदार्थों, कीड़ों-मकोड़ों और छोटे-छोटे जानवरों को इसी श्रेणी में रखा गया है। Collective Noun, Material Noun और Abstract Noun को भी इसी श्रेणी (Neuter Gender) में रखा गया है।

Note 2. हिंदी और अंग्रेजी में Gender (लिंग) के भेद तथा व्याख्या में अंतर है। हिंदी में दो ही लिंग हैं — स्त्रीलिंग और पुंलिंग। हिंदी भाषा में निर्जीव पदार्थ या तो पुंलिंग है या स्त्रीलिंग; वहीं अंग्रेजी में उन्हें Neuter Gender में रखा गया है। 'लेखा' हिंदी भाषा में स्त्रीलिंग है, परतु 'pen' अंग्रेजी मात्रा में Neuter Gender में है। अतः दोनों भाषाओं के इस अंतर को बराबर ध्यान में रखें।

Masculine Gender से Feminine Gender बनाना

1. अंग्रेजी भाषा में बहुत सारे ऐसे शब्द हैं जिनके feminine रूप में पूर्णतः नए शब्दों का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>boy (लड़का)</td>
<td>girl (लड़की)</td>
<td>father (पिता)</td>
<td>mother (माता)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>son (बेटा)</td>
<td>daughter (बेटी)</td>
<td>brother (भाई)</td>
<td>sister (बहन)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man (पुरुष)</td>
<td>woman (रूखी)</td>
<td>nephew (भतीजा)</td>
<td>niece (भतीजी)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncle (वान)</td>
<td>aunt (चाची)</td>
<td>bridegroom (हुलह)</td>
<td>bride (हुलह)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lad (लड़का)</td>
<td>lass (लड़की)</td>
<td>husband (पति)</td>
<td>wife (पत्नी)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>papa (पिता)</td>
<td>mama (माता)</td>
<td>widower (विधुर)</td>
<td>widow (विधुरा)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>king (राजा)</td>
<td>queen (रानी)</td>
<td>hero (नायक)</td>
<td>heroine (नायिका)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sir (महोदय)</td>
<td>Madam (महोदया)</td>
<td>Sultan (युलियान)</td>
<td>Sultana (युलियाना)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr (श्रीमान)</td>
<td>Mrs (श्रीमती)</td>
<td>monk (मठाचारी)</td>
<td>nun (मठाचारिनी)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Czar (जार)</td>
<td>Czarina (जारिना)</td>
<td>bull (बाघ)</td>
<td>cow (गाय)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cock (पुर्फ़ि)</td>
<td>hen (पुर्फ़ि)</td>
<td>dog (कुत्ता)</td>
<td>bitch (कुतिया)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horse (वोड़ा)</td>
<td>mare (घोड़ी)</td>
<td>ram (भेड़ा)</td>
<td>ewe (भेड़ी)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boar (सुअर)</td>
<td>sow (सुअरी)</td>
<td>fox (लॉपड़ी)</td>
<td>vixen (मादा लॉपड़ी)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. कुछ शब्दों में ‘ess’ जोड़कर Masculine से Feminine बनाया जाता है। जैसे —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>god (देवता)</td>
<td>goddess (देवी)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lion (शेर)</td>
<td>lioness (शेरनी)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poet (कवि)</td>
<td>poetess (कवियत्री)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>priest (पुजारी)</td>
<td>priestess (पुजारिन)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>author (लेखक)</td>
<td>authoress (लेखिका)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shepherd (गढ़ेरिया)</td>
<td>shepherdess (गढ़ेरिन)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heir (वारिस, दायाद)</td>
<td>heiress (दायादा)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host (भेजवान, मेहमानदार)</td>
<td>hostess (मेहमानदारिन)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prophet (पंगंबर, भविष्यवक्ता)</td>
<td>prophetess (भविष्यवक्ती)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mayor (महापौर)</td>
<td>mayoress (महिला महापौर)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patron (संतक)</td>
<td>patroness (संतकिका)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jew (यहूदी)</td>
<td>Jewess (यहूदिन)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giant (राक्षस)</td>
<td>giantess (राक्षसी)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. कुछ शब्दों के अंतिम Vowel को निकालने के बाद ‘ess’ जोड़कर Feminine बनाया जाता है। जैसे —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>actor (अभिनेता)</td>
<td>actress (अभिनेत्री)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiger (बाघ)</td>
<td>tigress (बाघिन)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negro (हवशी)</td>
<td>Negress (हवशिन)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prince (राजकुमार)</td>
<td>princess (राजकुमारिन)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traitor (विश्वासघाती)</td>
<td>traitress (विश्वासघातिनी)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waiter (बैरा, परिवेशक)</td>
<td>waitress (परिवेशिका)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conductor (पूरक कंडक्टर)</td>
<td>conductress (महिला कंडक्टर)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enchanter (जादूगर)</td>
<td>enchantress (जादूगरिन, मौहिनी)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>founder (संस्थापक)</td>
<td>foundress (संस्थापिका)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hunter (शिकारी)</td>
<td>huntress (शिकारिन)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instructor (प्रशिक्षक)</td>
<td>instructress (प्रशिक्षिका)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. कुछ शब्दों में आंतरिक बदलाव करने के बाद ‘ess’ जोड़कर Feminine बनाया जाता है। जैसे —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>master (मालिक)</td>
<td>mistress (मालिकिन)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abbot (मठाध्यक्ष)</td>
<td>abbess (मठाध्यक्षा)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emperor (सम्राट)</td>
<td>empress (सम्राटी)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murderer (हत्यारा)</td>
<td>murderess (हत्यारिन)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. कुछ शब्दों के परिवर्तन इस प्रकार होते हैं—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grandfather (दादा)</td>
<td>grandmother (दादी)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
grandson (पौत्र, पोता)     granddaughter (पौत्री, पोती)
stepfather (सौतेला पिता)   stepmother (सौतेली माता)
stepson (सौतेला बेटा)      stepdaughter (सौतेली बेटी)
father-in-law (ससुर)     mother-in-law (सास)
son-in-law (दामाद)    daughter-in-law (पतीनु)
brother-in-law (साला)    sister-in-law (साली)
milkman (र्वाला)          milkmaid (र्वालिन)
landlord (मकान-मालिक, जमीदार) landlady (मकान-मालिकन, जमीदारिन)
washerman (धोबी)      washerwoman (धोबिन)
manservant (नौकर)       maidservant (नौकरानी)
bull-calf (बछड़ा)    cow-calf (बछड़ी)
bull-elephant (हाथी)  cow-elephant (हथिनी)
he-goat (बकरा)       she-goat (बकरी)
he-bear (नर भालू)   she-bear (मादा भालू)
peacock (मोर)         peahen (मोरनी)
chairman (समापति, अध्यक्ष) chairwoman (महिला समापति, अध्यक्षा)

EXERCISE 23

Direction: Look at the box and answer the questions given below —

| teacher, cow, bitch, doctor, king, stone, driver, queen, widow, dog, enemy, hen, hostess, tea, poet, friend, prince, princess, master, mistress, Jew, goddess, tigress, author, lioness, landlord, class, she-goat, chairman, honesty, child, stepson, thief, mother, student, milk, woman, crow, parent, washerman, heroine, girl, bird, ant, writer, tree, baby, clerk, aunt, school, elephant, cousin, priest, neighbour, hero, table. |

1. Pick out the nouns of masculine gender from the box.
2. Pick out the nouns of feminine gender from the box.
3. Pick out the nouns of common gender from the box.
4. Pick out the nouns of neuter gender from the box.

EXERCISE 24

Direction: Answer the following questions —

1. Give the feminine gender of these nouns —

   god, father, host, son, lion, brother, prince, bull, poet, author, master, cock, actor, ram, dog, tiger, he-goat, horse, he-bear, husband, king, chairman, man, bull-calf, nephew, uncle, stepson, bridegroom, hero, milkman, washerman, father-in-law, landlord.
2. Give the masculine gender of these nouns—
(daughter, niece, aunt, hen, bitch, mare, nun, queen, widow, bride, maid, heroine, goddess, hostess, lioness, tigress, princess, mistress, poetess, actress, grandmother, stepsister, washerwoman, she-goat, maidservant, huntress, Negress, mistress, ewe, wife.

3. Give the opposite gender of these nouns—
bull, hen, mother, gentleman, queen, daughter, actor, lion, princess, tiger, giant, huntress, sister-in-law, she-goat, milkman, washerman, maidservant, bride, widow, bitch, monk, hero, master, mayor, heir, poet, author, prince, stepfather.

GENDER OF THE PRONOUN

Pronouns of Masculine Gender:
He, Him, His, Himself.

Pronouns of Feminine Gender:
She, Her, Hers, Herself.

Pronouns of Common Gender:
I, Me, Mine, Myself, We, Us, Ours, Ourselves, You, Yours, Yourself, Yourselves, Somebody, Nobody, Anybody, Everybody, Someone, No one, Anyone, Everyone, Who, Whom, etc.

Pronouns of Neuter Gender:
It, Itself, Nothing, Anything, Everything, Something, Which, etc.

Pronouns used for all genders:
They, Them, Theirs, Themselves, This, That, Each, Either, Neither, Many, Both, Whose, What, All, Some, None, etc.

EXERCISE 25

Direction: Look at the box and answer the questions given below—

This, That, She, Me, You, What, Our, His, Us, Who, They, He, Whom, Yourself, I, It, Them, Her, Everybody, Each, Him, Either, Anyone, Both, Nothing, Which, Itself.

1. Pick out the pronouns of masculine gender from the box.
2. Pick out the pronouns of feminine gender from the box.
3. Pick out the pronouns of common gender from the box.
4. Pick out the pronouns used for all genders from the box.
12. Person

अंग्रेजी में Person (पुरुष) तीन हैं —

1. First Person
2. Second Person
3. Third Person

Definition: बोलनेवाला First Person, जिससे बोला जाए वह Second Person तथा जिसके विषय में चर्चा की जाए वह Third Person कहलाता है।

* The first person is the person speaking, the second person is the person spoken to; and the third person is the person spoken about.

If I speak to you about Mohan, I am the first person, you are the second person and Mohan is the third person.

Examples:

First Person: I, We तथा इनके विभिन्न रूप (me, my, mine, myself, we, us, our, ours and ourselves) First Person के examples हैं।

Second Person: You तथा इसके अन्य रूप (your, yours, yourself and yourselves) Second Person के examples हैं।

Third Person: First Person तथा Second Person के शब्दों के अंतर्गत जितने Nouns और Pronouns हैं, वे सभी Third Person के examples हैं। जैसे — he, him, his, himself, she, her, hers, herself, it, its, itself, they, them, their, theirs, themselves, this, that, these, those, somebody, anybody, something, each, either, neither, all, none, many, both, Ram, Sita, mother, father, teacher, cow, dog, cat, school, sun, star, river, pen, book, etc.

Note: कभी-कभी प्रयोग के हिसाब से Third Person के words भी First Person या Second Person के हो जाते हैं। ऐसी कुछ परिस्थितियों पर विचार करें —

(a) किसी Noun को यदि हम संबोधनकारक के रूप में प्रयुक्त करें तो वह Second Person का हो जाएगा, जैसे —
Come here, Mohan.
Don’t go there, boys.
Shyam, what are you doing here?
पृष्ठ 58 के वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त शब्द Mohan, boys और Shyam Second Person में हों, क्योंकि वे persons spoken to के लिए प्रयुक्त हुए हैं।

(b) First Person का प्रतिशब्द (apposition) First Person का और Second Person का प्रतिशब्द Second Person का हो जाता है। जैसे—

You, Mohan, come here.
You, wicked boy, get out of the class.
I, Ram, am your true friend.
I, your friend, have come to help you.

इन वाक्यों में Mohan और wicked boy Second Person में हैं, क्योंकि वे you के प्रतिशब्द हैं और इनसे persons spoken to का बोध होता है। पुनः Ram और your friend First Person में हैं, क्योंकि वे I के प्रतिशब्द हैं और इनसे persons speaking का बोध होता है।

**EXERCISE 26**

*Direction: Look at the box and answer the questions given below—*

| I, me, cow, dog, you, hers, yours, Ram, Sita, mine, myself, our, school, it, boy, its, they, sun, he, star, yourself, she, themselves, ours, we, her, this, everybody, all, both, none. |

1. Pick out the words of first person from the box.
2. Pick out the words of second person from the box.
3. Pick out the words of third person from the box.
13. Case

Case के मुख्यतः तीन भेद हैं —
1. Nominative Case
2. Objective Case
3. Possessive Case

1. Nominative Case: जब कोई Noun या Pronoun किसी क्रिया के कर्ता के रूप में प्रयुक्त रहता है, तब वह Noun/Pronoun Nominative Case में होना समझा जाता है।

* When a noun or pronoun is used as the subject of a verb, it is said to be in the nominative case.

उदाहरण के लिए इन वाक्यों को देखें —
Ram is eating.
Cows eat grass.
He reads in class VI.

यहाँ Ram, Cows और He क्रमशः is eating, eat और reads क्रियाओं के Subjects हैं। अतः Ram, Cows और He Nominative Case में हैं।

2. Objective Case: जब कोई Noun या Pronoun किसी Verb या Preposition के Object के रूप में प्रयुक्त रहता है, तब वह Noun/Pronoun Objective Case में होना समझा जाता है।

* When a noun or pronoun is used as the object of a verb or preposition, it is said to be in the objective case.

उदाहरण के लिए इन वाक्यों को देखें —
He eats rice.
She loves me.
I am going to him.

यहाँ rice, me और him क्रमशः Verb eats, Verb loves और Preposition to के objects के रूप में प्रयुक्त हैं। अतः इन वाक्यों में rice, me और him Objective Case में हैं।

3. Possessive Case: जब किसी Noun/Pronoun के रूप से अधिकार या संबंध का भाव प्रकट होता है, तब उक्त Noun/Pronoun को Possessive Case में होना समझा जाता है।

* When the form of a noun or pronoun is used to show possession or relation, it is said to be in the possessive case.
उदाहरण के लिए इन वाक्यों को देखें —
This is Ram's cow.
He is Sohan's brother.
She is my sister.
This is his cat.

यह Ram's, Sohan's, my और his से संबंध/अधिकार का भाव प्रकट होता है। अतः इन्हें Possessive Case में होना समझा जाएगा।

Note 1. Noun याहे Nominative Case में रहे या Objective Case में उसका रूप बिलकुल नहीं बदलता है, लेकिन Possessive Case में इसके रूप में परिवर्तन होता है।

Note 2. Pronouns के तीनों Cases के रूपों में भिन्नताएं होती हैं, जिन्हें इस सारणी से समझें।

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative Case</th>
<th>Possessive Case</th>
<th>Objective Case</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>My</td>
<td>Me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>Our</td>
<td>Us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>Your</td>
<td>You</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>His</td>
<td>Him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>Her</td>
<td>Hers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It</td>
<td>Its</td>
<td>It</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>Their</td>
<td>Them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXERCISE 27**

Direction: Indicate the case of the words which are in bold print in the following sentences. Use the method as shown in these solved examples.

Examples:

(a) **Ram** beats **Shyam.**
    Nom. Case          Obj. Case

(b) **She** is **my** sister.
    Nom. Case         Poss. Case

(c) **It** was for **them.**
    Nom. Case         Obj. Case

(d) **Mohan's** father always helps **me.**
    Poss. Case        Obj. Case
(e) **He** wrote a **letter** yesterday.
Nom. Case               Obj. Case

(f) The **hat** is on the **table**.
Nom. Case               Obj. Case

(g) These books are **mine**.
Poss. Case

(h) This is for **Ravi**.
Obj. Case

1. **Mohan** loves **Sheela**.
2. The **boys** went to **school**.
3. **She** bought a beautiful **frock**.
4. **Cats** kill **rats**.
5. This is for **Shyam**.
6. **They** are in the **room**.
7. My mother loves **me** very much.
8. **Mohan**’s friend is going to **him**.
9. The **kite** is flying in the **sky**.
10. These books are **hers**.
11. A **tiger** attacked **Ravi**.
12. What is on the **table**?
13. **Our** friends live in a **village**.
14. **She** does not like their **village**.
15. Does the **boy** know **Ram**’s **school**?
16. This is the girl’s dress.
17. **My** wife is his **sister**.
18. These are theirs.
19. The **horse** kicked the poor **girl**.
20. Go to **bed**.
21. **Ram** is Mohan’s friend.
22. I know Mohan very well.
23. You know **me**.
24. I know you.
Noun के Possessive Case बनाने की विधि

1. प्राणिबोधक Singular Noun के अंत में ’s जोड़कर Possessive Case बनाया जाता है। जैसे —
   राम की किताब
   लड़की की गुड़िया
   राजा का पुत्र
   गाय का दूध
   मनुष्य का जीवन
   Ram’s book
   the girl’s doll
   the king’s son
   the cow’s milk
   man’s life

2. प्राणिबोधक Plural Noun जिसके अंत में s नहीं रहता है, उसके अंत में ’s जोड़कर Possessive Case बनाया जाता है। जैसे —
   पुरुषों का ड्रेस
   बच्चों का स्कूल
   निजी स्कूल
   पुरुषों की पूंछ
   men’s dress
   children’s school
   women’s college

3. प्राणिबोधक Plural Noun जिसके अंत में s रहता है, उसमें मात्र Apostrophe (’) जोड़कर Possessive Case बनाया जाता है। जैसे —
   लड़कों का स्कूल
   लड़कियों का ड्रेस
   बिद्यार्थियों के नाम
   चारों का पूंछ
   boys’ school
   girls’ dress
   students’ names
   horses’ tails

4. निर्जीव वस्तु के साथ संबंध सुचित करने के लिए साधारणतः of का प्रयोग किया जाता है न कि ’s या apostrophe का। जैसे —
   स्कूल का नाम — the name of the school न कि the school’s name
   घर का दरवाजा — the door of the house न कि the house’s door
   कुर्सी की दोंग — the leg of the chair न कि the chair’s leg
   कुर्सी का पानी — the water of the well न कि the well’s water
   गाँवों की सड़कें — the roads of villages न कि villages’ roads
   बिहार की राजधानी — the capital of Bihar न कि Bihar’s capital
   गाँव के लोग — the people of the village न कि the village’s people
   वृक्ष की धारली — the branch of the tree न कि the tree’s branch

ध्यान में — ऐसे Phrases में जब of प्रयुक्त रहता है तब प्रथम Noun के पहले the का प्रयोग अनिवार्य होता है।

5. प्राणिबोधक Noun के साथ दोनों ही constructions संभव हैं, जैसे —
   गाय का दूध — the cow’s milk या the milk of the cow
   राम का दोस्त — Ram’s friend या the friend of Ram
   विद्यार्थियों के नाम — the students’ names या the names of the students
6. ‘s या apostrophe का प्रयोग सामान्यतया प्राणिबोधक Noun के अंत में किया जाता है, निर्देश वस्तु के नाम के अंत में नहीं। परंतु कुछ परिस्थितियों में निर्देश के साथ भी ‘s या apostrophe प्रयुक्त होता है। जैसे —

(a) समय, दूरी तथा वजनसूचक शब्दों के साथ ‘s या apostrophe लगाता है। जैसे —

a week’s holiday, in a year’s time, five days’ leave, six years’ experience, a month’s journey, a mile’s length, a stone’s throw, a foot’s length, a pound’s weight, three pounds’ weight, etc.

(b) Personified objects के साथ ‘s या apostrophe लगाता है, जैसे —
Nature’s laws, India’s heroes, at death’s door, at duty’s call, the sun’s rays, etc.

(c) कुछ प्रचलित प्रयोग, जैसे —
for mercy’s sake, to his heart’s content, at his wit’s ends, etc.

Some Special Notes:

1. हिंदी के संबंधकारक से युक्त शब्द-समूहों का अंग्रेजी अनुवाद जब ‘s या apostrophe की मदद से होता है तब शब्द-क्रम (word-order) दोनों भाषाओं में same रहता है। जैसे —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>राम</th>
<th>की गाय</th>
<th>Ram</th>
<th>‘s</th>
<th>cow</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>घोड़ों के पौंव</th>
<th>horses के feet</th>
<th>the cow के ‘s milk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 2 3</td>
<td>1 2 3</td>
<td>1 2 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. जब अनुवाद of या किसी अन्य Preposition की मदद से होता है, तब शब्द-क्रम ठीक उलटा हो जाता है। जैसे —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>राम</th>
<th>की गाय</th>
<th>the cow</th>
<th>of</th>
<th>Ram</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>घोड़ों के पौंव</th>
<th>the feet of horses</th>
<th>the cow के ‘s milk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 2 3</td>
<td>3 2 1</td>
<td>3 2 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

यहाँ of के पूर्व प्रयुक्त Noun के पहले the लगाना अनिवार्य हो जाता है।
इसका ध्यान हमेशा रखेंगे।
EXERCISE 28

(Direction: Translate the following into English in as many ways as possible -)

Examples:

(a) लड़कों के नाम
boys' names/the names of boys
(b) बैलों के पैर
oxen's feet/the feet of oxen
(c) गाय का दूध
the cow's milk/the milk of the cow
(d) घर का दरवाजा
the door of the house
(e) पुस्तक की कीमत
the price of the book

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Hindi Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>मोहन का दोस्त</td>
<td>friend of Mohan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>राम की गाय</td>
<td>cow of Ram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>सीता की बहनें</td>
<td>sisters of Sita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>विहार की राजधानी</td>
<td>capital of city</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>मदन का स्कूल</td>
<td>school of Madan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>नदी का पानी</td>
<td>water of river</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>कुर्ग की गहराई</td>
<td>depth of well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>पटना की सड़क</td>
<td>road of Patna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>गाय का दूध</td>
<td>milk of cow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>गायों का दूध</td>
<td>milk of cows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>कुट्टे की पूंछ</td>
<td>tail of puppy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>कुट्टों की पूंछें</td>
<td>tails of puppies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>लड़कों के नाम</td>
<td>names of boys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>गाँव का नाम</td>
<td>name of village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>गाँव की सड़क</td>
<td>road of village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>गाँवों की सड़कें</td>
<td>roads of villages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>शिष्क का नाम</td>
<td>name of teacher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>शिष्कों के नाम</td>
<td>names of teachers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>पुस्तक का नाम</td>
<td>name of book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>पुस्तकों के नाम</td>
<td>names of books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>बच्चों के नाम</td>
<td>names of children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>बैलों के दाम</td>
<td>price of oxen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>अध्यात्म का भविष्य</td>
<td>future of spiritual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>पुरुषों का ड्रेस</td>
<td>dress of men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>लड़कियों का स्कूल</td>
<td>school of girls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>लड़की का स्कूल</td>
<td>school of girls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>पिता का नाम</td>
<td>name of father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>पुस्तक का मूल्य</td>
<td>price of book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>पुस्तकों के मूल्य</td>
<td>prices of books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>कुर्सी की टीग</td>
<td>chair of kurshiy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>कोट का रंग</td>
<td>color of coat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>किताब के पने</td>
<td>pages of books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>मनुष्य का चेहरा</td>
<td>face of man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>कमरे की खिरंडी</td>
<td>unit of room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>गाँव की सड़कें</td>
<td>roads of village</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>वृक्ष की हाली</td>
<td>surface of tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>स्कूल का नाम</td>
<td>name of school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>गायों के रंग</td>
<td>color of cows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>देश का नेता</td>
<td>leader of country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>शिष्क की इमानदारी</td>
<td>honesty of teacher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>आदमी का हाथ</td>
<td>hand of man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>उस लड़की की आँखें</td>
<td>eyes of that girl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>मेरे दोस्त का पता</td>
<td>address of friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>एक टन का वजन</td>
<td>weight of one ton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>मिस्टर दास की कार</td>
<td>car of Mr. Das</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14. Degrees of Comparison

इन वाक्यों को देखें —

(a) Ram’s mango is sweet.
(b) Mohan’s mango is sweeter than Ram’s.
(c) Sohan’s mango is the sweetest of all.

उपर्युक्त वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त Adjectives sweet, sweeter और sweetest पर विचार करें। प्रथम वाक्य में Adjective ‘sweet’ केवल यह बताता है कि राम के आम में मिठास का गुण है। दूसरे वाक्य में Adjective ‘sweeter’ यह बताता है कि मोहन के आम में राम के आम की अपेक्षा मिठास का गुण अधिक है। तीसरे वाक्य में Adjective ‘sweetest’ यह बताता है कि सोहन के आम में मिठास का गुण सबसे अधिक है। इस प्रकार हम देखते हैं कि तुलना दिखाने के लिए Adjective अपना रूप (sweet, sweeter, sweetest) बदलता है।

ऐसे ही अंग्रेजी भाषा में अनेक Adjectives और Adverbs हैं जो तुलना दिखाने के लिए अपना रूप बदल लेते हैं और हमें प्रत्येक के तीन रूप प्राप्त होते हैं, जिन्हें Three Degrees of Comparison कहते हैं। इन तीनों Degrees of Comparison के नाम इस प्रकार हैं —

1. Positive Degree  
2. Comparative Degree  
3. Superlative Degree  

1. Positive Degree: जब कोई Adjective या Adverb अपने सरल रूप में रहता है, तब इसे Positive Degree में होना समझा जाता है।

* When an adjective or adverb is in its simple form, it is said to be in the positive degree.

Examples: good, old, fat, big, sweet, strong, slowly, etc.

Sita is a good girl.  I saw a big car there.
He is an old man.    My brother is strong.
Ram is very fat.      He runs slowly.
I have a red car.     She is tall.

2. Comparative Degree: जब Adjective या Adverb से दो व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के गुणों की तुलना का बोध होता है, तब इसे Comparative Degree में होना समझा जाता है।
* When an adjective or adverb is used to compare the qualities of two persons or things together, it is said to be in the comparative degree.

Examples: better, older, bigger, stronger, more slowly, etc.

This pen is better than that pen.
This tree is older than that tree.
My car is bigger than his car.
He was stronger than his enemy.
He runs more slowly than Ram.

3. Superlative Degree: जब Adjective या Adverb से तीन या तीन से अधिक व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं के गुणों की तुलना का बोध होता है, तब इसे Superlative Degree में होना समझा जाता है।

* When an adjective or adverb is used to compare the qualities of three or more than three persons or things together, it is said to be in the superlative degree.

Examples: best, oldest, biggest, sweetest, strongest, most slowly, etc.

Ram is the best boy in the class.
This is the oldest tree in my garden.
This room is the biggest of all.
He was the strongest man.
Of all the players Sonu ran most slowly.

**FORMATION OF COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE DEGREES**

1. एक syllable के अधिकांश adjectives/adverbs में er/r जोड़कर Comparative तथा est/st जोड़कर Superlative बनाया जाता है। यह नियम कुछ दो syllables वाले adjectives के साथ भी लागू होता है। जैसे—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>small</td>
<td>smaller</td>
<td>smallest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tall</td>
<td>taller</td>
<td>tallest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>young</td>
<td>younger</td>
<td>youngest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>kinder</td>
<td>kindest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast</td>
<td>faster</td>
<td>fastest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loud</td>
<td>louder</td>
<td>loudest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

इसी प्रकार sweet, high, strong, bright, dark, poor, clever, bold,
brave, fine, wise, white, large, hard, long, soon, near, इत्यादि के Comparative और Superlative Degrees बनाए जाते हैं।

2. जब positive एक syllable का रहता है, अंत में एक consonant और उसके पहले एक vowel रहता है, तब er/est लगाने से पहले अंतिम consonant को double कर दिया जाता है। जैसे—

red —redder —reddest
big —bigger —biggest
thin —thinner —thinnest

इसी प्रकार hot, fat, sad, etc के degrees परिवर्तित होते हैं।

3. अगर Positive Degree के adjective का अंत consonant +y से होता है, तब y को i में बदलने के बाद er जोड़कर Comparative और est जोड़कर Superlative बनाए जाते हैं। जैसे—

happy—happier—happiest
easy—easier—easiest
heavy—heavier—heaviest
dry—drier—driest

इसी प्रकार silly, pretty, wealthy, holy, merry, etc के degrees परिवर्तित होते हैं।

4. ऐसे adverbs जिनके अंत ly से होते हैं, उनके Comparative और Superlative क्रमशः more तथा most लगाकर बनाए जाते हैं। जैसे—

beautifully—more beautifully—most beautifully
carefully—more carefully—most carefully

इसी प्रकार swiftly, skilfully, wisely, frequently के degrees परिवर्तित होते हैं।

5. तीन या तीन से अधिक syllables वाले Adjectives में प्रायः more तथा most लगाकर क्रमशः Comparative और Superlative बनाते हैं। यह नियम कुछ दो syllables वाले Adjectives के लिए भी लागू होता है। जैसे—

beautiful—more beautiful—most beautiful
intelligent—more intelligent—most intelligent
proper—more proper—most proper

dangerous, laborious, learned, useful, courageous, industrious, difficult, splendid, etc में more तथा most लगाकर degrees परिवर्तित करते हैं।

6. कुछ Adjectives/Adverbs ऐसे हैं जिनके Comparative तथा Superlative Degrees में नए words आते हैं। ऐसे Adjectives/Adverbs के तीनों forms को अच्छी तरह याद कर लेना चाहिए।
## Irregular Comparison

### [ADJECTIVES]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>good</th>
<th>better</th>
<th>best</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much/many</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>little</td>
<td>less</td>
<td>least</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old</td>
<td>elder</td>
<td>eldest (of people only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>older</td>
<td>oldest (of people and things)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### [ADVERBS]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>badly</th>
<th>worse</th>
<th>worst</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>well</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>little</td>
<td>less</td>
<td>least</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. बहुत सारे adverbs तथा कुछ adjectives ऐसे हैं जिनका प्रयोग Comparative और Superlative Degrees में नहीं होता है। जैसे —

now, then, where, once, there, here, circular, round, square, right, wrong, etc.

### EXERCISE 29

**Direction:** Write down the comparative and superlative degrees of these words —

tall, young, high, wise, white, red, big, happy, easy, beautiful, useful, difficult, carefully, good, bad, much, well.
15. The Sentence

इन्हें ध्यान से देखें —

1. The boy is going to school.
2. My father is a teacher.
3. He reading is.
4. Boy dance room.

उपर्युक्त प्रत्येक पंक्ति में शब्दों का समूह है। इन्हें ध्यान से पढ़ने पर पता चलता है कि प्रथम दो पंक्तियों में से प्रत्येक पंक्ति के शब्द एक निश्चित क्रम में रखे गए हैं और इनसे पूर्ण अर्थ निकलता है। इन दोनों में से प्रत्येक को Grammar की भाषा में Sentence कहा जाएगा। तीसरी पंक्ति के words निश्चित क्रम में नहीं हैं और इसलिए, हमें इनका पूर्ण अर्थ प्राप्त नहीं हो रहा है। अंतिम पंक्ति के शब्द न तो निश्चित क्रम में रखे गए हैं और न ही इनका combination पूर्ण अर्थ देता है। अतः अंतिम दोनों पंक्तियों के शब्द-समूह Sentences नहीं कहलाएँगे। अब हम Sentence की परिभाषा इस प्रकार दे सकते हैं —

Definition: शब्दों का वह समूह जो निश्चित दृष्टि से क्रमबद्ध हो और पूर्ण अर्थ देता हो, Sentence कहलाता है।

* A sentence is a group of words put together in a certain order giving complete sense.

Note: एक sentence में प्रायः दो या दो से अधिक words रहते हैं, लेकिन Imperative Sentence एक word से भी बन सकता है, जैसे —

Go. (जाओः)
Come. (आओः)
Laugh. (हंसोः)

ऐसे Sentences में Subject ‘You’ छिपा रहता है, अर्थात् Go का अर्थ होता है You go; Come का You come और Laugh का You laugh.

Kinds of Sentences

अर्थ के अनुसार Sentence पाँच प्रकार के होते हैं —

1. Assertive Sentence
2. Interrogative Sentence
3. Imperative Sentence
4. Optative Sentence
5. Exclamatory Sentence
1. **Assertive Sentence:** जो वाक्य किसी कथन को व्यक्त करता है, वह Assertive Sentence कहलाता है।

* A sentence that makes a statement is called an assertive sentence; as,

I am going to school. He will come soon.
Ram is not a good boy. She reads in class VI.

**Note:** Assertive Sentence में सामान्यतः पहले Subject आता है, तब Verb और फिर अन्य पद। वाक्य के अंत में full stop (.) अवक्ष्य होता है।

2. **Interrogative Sentence:** जिस वाक्य के द्वारा कोई प्रश्न किया जाता है, वह Interrogative Sentence कहलाता है।

* A sentence that asks a question is called an interrogative sentence; as,

What is your name? Are you a student?
Who will help you? Why did he not go there?

**Note:** Interrogative Sentence किसी Interrogative Word या Auxiliary Verb से शुरू होता है और इसके अंत में Question Mark (?) निर्दिष्ट रूप से रहता है। Who, whom, whose, which, what, where, when, how, why, etc Interrogative Words हैं।

3. **Imperative Sentence:** जिस वाक्य से आदेश, अनुरोध या सलाह का भाव प्रकट होता है, वह Imperative Sentence कहलाता है।

* A sentence that expresses an order, a request or a piece of advice is called an imperative sentence; as,

Bring a glass of water. Please help me.
Don’t go there. Take medicine in time.

**Note:** ऐसे वाक्यों में Subject ‘you’ सामान्यतः छिपा रहता है तथा वाक्य के अंत में Full Stop (.) प्रयुक्त रहता है।

4. **Optative Sentence:** जिस वाक्य से शप, आशीर्वाद, प्रार्थना या इच्छा का भाव व्यक्त होता है, वह Optative Sentence कहलाता है।

* A sentence that expresses some curse, blessing, prayer or wish is called an optative sentence; as,

May you die of cholera!
May God help you!
(May) God save the king!
May the king live long!
May he get success!
May the soul of Gandhijee get peace in the Heaven!
**Note:** Optative Sentence प्रायः: May से प्रारंभ होता है और Exclamation के चिह्न (!) से समाप्त होता है। कुछ वाक्यों में May छिपा भी रह सकता है, फिर भी भाव या अर्थ में परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। जैसे —

God bless you! = May God bless you!
Long live our friendship! = May our friendship live long!
Long live the king! = May the king live long!
God save the king! = May God save the king!

5. **Exclamatory Sentence:** जिस वाक्य से प्रसन्नता, दुःख, आश्चर्य, धृष्टि या प्रशंसा की दीनता अभिव्यक्ति का बोध होता है, वह Exclamatory Sentence कहलाता है।

* A sentence that expresses some sudden or strong feeling of the mind is called an exclamatory sentence; as,

What a beautiful scene it is!
What a fall!
How dark the night is!
Well done! Mohan.
Alas! I am ruined.

**Note:** ऐसी अभिव्यक्तियों में Exclamations के बाद Sign of Exclamation (!) रहता है।

**Affirmative and Negative Sentences**

उपर आपने Sentence के प्रकार और उनके examples को देखा है। ये Sentences या तो Affirmative हैं या Negative. जिस Sentence में कोई भी Negative Word प्रयुक्त नहीं रहता है, वह Affirmative Sentence कहलाता है और जिस Sentence में कोई भी Negative Word प्रयुक्त रहता है, वह Negative Sentence कहलाता है। no, not, never, none, nobody, nothing, neither, nor, etc Negative Words हैं।

**Affirmative Sentences:**

He is a boy.
Is he a student?
Please do this.
Help the poor.

May God help you!
God save the king!
How nice she is!
May I come in?

**Negative Sentences:**

He is not a thief.
Don’t you know English?
Don’t go there.
I never tell a lie.

Please do not kill me.
He has no money.
May he not succeed!
Neither team won the match.
EXERCISE 30

Direction: Say whether the following sentences are assertive, interrogative, imperative, optative or exclamatory.

1. Are you ready?
2. Please help me.
3. Come.
4. She is a nurse.
5. I have no time.
6. May God help you!
7. Can you sing?
8. Do.
9. Did he not come?
10. What a lovely rose!
11. What a dark night it is!
12. Is it clear?
13. Do it at once.
14. What do you want?
15. What a beautiful watch!
16. Please pass the sugar.
17. Long live our friendship!
18. Take care of your health.
19. Do or die.
20. She will take care of her health.
16. Articles

A, An और The को Articles कहते हैं। A/An को Indefinite Article तथा The को Definite Article कहते हैं।

USE OF A/AN

1. (a) A/An का प्रयोग Singular Countable Noun (अर्थात् Common Noun और Collective Noun) के पहले होता है। जैसे —
   This is a box.
   Ram is a student.
   A dog is an animal.
   A team of players is passing.

(b) अगर Noun Plural Number में हो, तो A/An का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।
   जैसे —
   These are boxes.
   Dogs are animals.
   They are doctors.

(c) अगर Noun Uncountable हो, तो A/An का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।
   जैसे —
   This is Ram.
   This is water.

(d) अगर Noun का लोप हो, तो A/An का प्रयोग नहीं होगा।
   जैसे —
   She is very honest.
   My mother is kind.

2. अगर Noun के पहले Adjective हो, तो Article का प्रयोग Adjective के पहले होगा। अगर Noun के पहले Adjective और Adjective के पहले Adverb हो, तो Article का प्रयोग Adverb के पहले होगा।
   जैसे —
   This is a cat.
   This is a black cat.
   This is a very black cat.

3. A/An का प्रयोग अपने ठीक बाद आनेवाले शब्द के उच्चारण के अनुसार होगा।
   जैसे —
   Sita is a girl.
Sita is an ideal girl.
Sita is a good girl.
Sita is an extremely beautiful girl.
Sita is a very good girl.

**A और An के प्रयोग में अंतर—**

जिस शब्द के पहले Indefinite Article (A/An) का प्रयोग करना हो यदि वह स्वर-ध्वनि (vowel sound) से प्रारंभ हो, तो an का प्रयोग होगा। यदि वह शब्द व्यंजन-ध्वनि (consonant sound) से प्रारंभ हो, तो a का प्रयोग होगा।

यहाँ ध्यान देनेवाली बात यह है कि a/an का प्रयोग अभीष्ट शब्द के उच्चारण पर निर्भर करता है, उसके spelling पर नहीं।

अतः A/An का प्रयोग करने से पहले आप देखें कि अभीष्ट शब्द का उच्चारण vowel sound से शुरू हो रहा है कि consonant sound से। कोई शब्द vowel sound से शुरू हो रहा है या consonant sound से, इसे निश्चित रूप से जानने के लिए एक सरल नियम है। जिस शब्द के पहले a/an का प्रयोग करना हो, उसके उच्चारण को हिंदी में लिखें। यदि उसका पहला अक्षर हिंदी में व्यंजन हो, तो उसके पहले a का प्रयोग करें। यदि उसका पहला अक्षर हिंदी में स्वर हो, तो an का प्रयोग करें।

हिंदी में स्वर — आ आ इ ई ————
हिंदी में व्यंजन — क ख ग घ ————

a cat (केट) यहाँ पहला अक्षर 'क' है, जो व्यंजन है।
an ant (एंट) यहाँ पहला अक्षर 'ए' है, जो स्वर है।
an honest man (ऑनिस्ट) यहाँ पहला अक्षर 'ओ' है, जो स्वर है।
an M.A. (एम.ए) यहाँ पहला अक्षर 'ए' है, जो स्वर है।
a European (यूरोपियन) यहाँ पहला अक्षर 'य' है, जो व्यंजन है।

इसी प्रकार निम्नलिखित शब्दों के साथ a/an के प्रयोग को ध्यान से देखकर समझें।

a university (यूनिवर्सिटी) व्यंजन-ध्वनि — य
an hour (हार) स्वर-ध्वनि — आ
a one-eyed man (वन) व्यंजन-ध्वनि — व
an S.D.O. (एस.डी.ओ) स्वर-ध्वनि — ए

**EXERCISE 31**

Direction: Put a/an before the following words/phrases. If there is no need of a/an put a cross mark (×).

Examples:
(a) × ants
... (b) an ant
EXERCISE 32

Direction: Use a/an where necessary. Put a cross mark (×) where no a/an is required.

Examples:
(a) ...... cow gives ...... milk.
(b) Have you ........ oxen?
(c) They are ........ honest.
(d) This is ........ useful book.

Answers
A cow gives × milk.
Have you × oxen?
They are × honest.
This is a useful book.
1. He is .......... honest man.
2. Patna is .......... big city.
3. I am .......... Indian.
4. He has .......... ox.
5. This is .......... egg.
6. This is .......... ink.
7. That is .......... ink-pot.
8. He is .......... European.
9. He is .......... old man.
10. Have you seen .......... elephants?
11. He is .......... M.A.
12. You are .......... B.A.
13. Ram Babu is .......... M.L.A.
14. She is .......... ideal teacher.
15. This is .......... useful book.
16. It is .......... one-act play.
17. That is .......... intelligent dog.
18. Have you .......... cow?
21. They are .......... Indians.
22. Have you .......... eggs?
23. They have .......... mangoes.
24. He is .......... honest.
25. They are .......... honest boys.
27. He is .......... Urdu poet.
28. She is .......... extremely beautiful.
29. This is .......... interesting story.
30. It was .......... unique sight.

**USE OF THE**

1. (a) पूरी जाति का बोध कराने के लिए Singular Common Noun के पहले The का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —

   The cow gives milk.  
   (गाय दूध देती है।)

   The cow is an animal.  
   (गाय एक जानवर है।)

   The horse is useful.  
   (घोड़ा उपयोगी होता है।)

(b) परंतु पूरी जाति का बोध कराने के लिए Plural Common Noun के पहले The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे —
Cows give milk. \(\text{(गायें दूध देती हैं।)}\)
Cows are animals. \(\text{(गायें जानवर हैं।)}\)
Horses are useful. \(\text{(घोड़े उपयोगी होते हैं।)}\)

(c) सामान्य अर्थ में Proper Noun और Uncountable Noun के पहले The का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे —

Ram is a boy. \(\text{(राम एक लड़का है।)}\)
Milk is useful. \(\text{(दूध लाभदायक होता है।)}\)
Gold is yellow. \(\text{(सोना पीला होता है।)}\)

2. The का प्रयोग उस Noun के पहले होगा जो खास/निश्चित/पूर्व-परिचित हो, जिसे यक्ता और शोटा पहले से जानते हैं। इस स्थिति में Noun Singular हो या Plural, Countable हो या Uncountable, the का प्रयोग होगा। जैसे —

(a) घोड़े अच्छे हैं। \(\sim\) The horses are good.
\((\text{यहाँ कुछ खास/निश्चित घोड़ों की चर्चा है, अतः Plural Noun के पहले the प्रयुक्त हुआ है जो सही है।)}\)
(b) पानी गंदा था। \(\sim\) The water was dirty.
\((\text{यहाँ खास/निश्चित/पूर्वपरिचित पानी की चर्चा है, अतः Uncountable Noun के पहले the प्रयुक्त हुआ है जो सही है।)}\)
(c) कलम लाल है। \(\sim\) The pen is red.
\((\text{कोई खास/निश्चित कलम की चर्चा है, अतः pen के पहले the प्रयुक्त हुआ है।)}\)

3. जब कोई Singular Countable Noun story/speech/discourse में पहली बार आता है, तब उसके पहले a/an लगता है। यह समझा जाता है कि शोटा उससे पूर्वपरिचित नहीं हैं। परंतु जब उसी noun की पुनरावृत्ति होती है, तब उसके पहले the का प्रयोग होता है क्योंकि तब तक शोटा उससे परिचित हो चुके रहते हैं।

(a) There was a king. The king was very brave.
(b) I saw a boy. The boy was weeping.
(c) I have bought a car. The car is very beautiful. If you want to see the car, come to my home. I think you will like the car.

4. जब वाक्य में noun + preposition + noun का प्रयोग हो, तब प्रथम noun के पहले the का प्रयोग होगा। जैसे —

The tea of Assam is famous.
The mangoes on the tree are not ripe.
The Ram of the Ramayana is an ideal personality.
I like the sweets of Gaya.
5. पर्वतश्रेणी या शृङ्खलाबद्ध पर्वतों (ranges of mountains) के नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग अवश्य होता है। जैसे —
the Himalayas, the Alps, the Vindhyas.

परभु चोटी (peak) या जो पहाड़ एकवचन रूप में रहते हैं, उनके नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे —
Mount Everest, Snowdon, Mount Abu.

6. द्वीपमूह (groups of islands) के नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —
the West Indies, the Andamans.

परभु जो द्वीप एकवचन रूप में रहते हैं, उनके नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे —
Ceylon, Sicily, Sumatra, Java.

7. नदी, खाड़ी, सागर, महासागर, जंगल, मरुभूमि, इत्यादि के नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —
the Ganges, the Indus, the Thames, the Gulf of Mexico, the Bay of Bengal, the Indian Ocean, the Pacific Ocean, the Sahara.

8. बड़े ग्रंथों के नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —
the Gita, The Bible, the Vedas, the Ramayana, the Koran, the Mahabharata, the Paradise Lost.

9. आकाशीय पिंड, दिशा या जो वस्तु दुनिया में केवल एक है, उनके नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —
the earth, the sun, the moon, the sky, the east, the west, the world.

10. Newspapers के नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —

11. Historical Places/Buildings के नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —
the Tajmahal, the Red Fort, the Golghar.

12. Musical Instruments के नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है।
the tabla, the violin, the harmonium, the guitar.

13. हवाई जहाज, समुद्री जहाज तथा रेलगाड़ी के नामों के पहले the लगता है।
the Meghdoot (एक जहाज का नाम), the Vikrant (समुद्री जहाज का नाम),
the Toofan Express (रेलगाड़ी का नाम).
14. देशों के नामों के पहले article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, परंतु इन देशों के नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —

the U.S.A., the U.S.S.R., the United Kingdom, the Netherlands, the Sudan.

15. जब ordinal numbers को letters में लिखा जाता है, तब उनके पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —

the first, the second, the tenth.

16. जब Adjective का प्रयोग Noun की तरह होता है, तब उसके पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —

The poor are honest. (the poor = poor men)
The deaf can’t hear. (the deaf = deaf people)

17. Superlative Degree के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —

She is the most beautiful girl in the class.
Akbar was one of the greatest kings.

18. Office, cinema, theatre तथा circus शब्द के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —

He is going to the office / cinema / theatre / circus.

**Articles का लोप (Omission of Articles)**

ऊपर कुछ उन परिस्थितिओं का निक खिया जा चुका है, जहाँ Article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। उनके अलावा सामान्य अर्थ का बोध कराने के लिए निम्नलिखित परिस्थितिओं में Article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है —

1. व्यक्ति, गाँव, शहर, जिला, राज्य, देश या महादेश के खास नाम के पहले सामान्य अर्थ में Article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे —

Mohan helps Sohan.
Patna is the capital of Bihar.
India is a big country.

2. भाषा एवं विषय के नामों के पहले Article नहीं लगाता है। जैसे —

I know English/French/Hindi/Urdu/Bengali/Tamil.
Physics is an interesting subject.
I have no interest in mathematics.

3. दिनों और महीनों के नामों के पहले Article नहीं लगाता है। जैसे —

January has thirty-one days.
It is Monday today.
4. वीमारियों के नामों के पहले Article नहीं लगता है। जैसे — He is suffering from cholera/smallpox.
परंतु कुछ वीमारियों के नामों के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे — the plague, the gout, the measles, the mumps.
5. पत्तों तथा कुलुओं के नामों के पहले Article नहीं लगता है। जैसे — Holi/Christmas is an important festival.
I shall go to Shimla in summer. (परंतु in the summer season)
6. खेल-कूद के नामों के पहले Article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे —
I play football/tennis/cricket/badminton.
7. भोजन-सामग्री तथा भोजन के नामों के पहले Article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे —
I like rice and fish.
I take tea/coffee everyday.
There is chicken/lamb/egg in the menu.
When do you have lunch/dinner/supper/breakfast?
8. Possessive Adjectives (my, our, your, his, her, their & its) तथा Nouns in Possessive Case (Ram’s, cow’s, etc) के तुरंत बाद Article का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। जैसे —
This is my book.
This is Ram’s cow.

**EXERCISE 33**

*Direction: Use a, an or the where necessary. Put a cross mark (×) where no article is required.*

**Examples:**

| (a) …… cat has …… tail. | A/The cat has a tail. |
| (b) …… cats eat …… rats. | × Cats eat × rats. |
| (c) …… chair was new. | The chair was new. |
| (d) …… silver is white. | × Silver is white. |

1. …… cow gives milk.
2. …… cows give milk.
3. …… horses are useful.
4. …… horse is useful.
5. …… cats eat meat.
6. …… cat eats …… rat.
7. cats eat rats.
8. honey is sweet.
9. gold is yellow.
10. iron is hard.
11. water is useful.
12. oil floats on water.
13. We eat rice.
14. We drink milk.
15. We take tea everyday.
16. honesty is the best policy.
17. crow is black.
18. table has four legs.
19. I take sugar in tea.
20. pen was red.
21. child is ill.
22. woman is mad.
24. man is M.A.
25. woman was nurse.
26. beggar was honest.
27. oxen are ill.
28. cows are not giving milk.
29. I sold cows.
30. dogs have four legs.

**EXERCISE 34**

*Direction: Use a, an or the where necessary. Put a cross mark (x) where no article is required.*

*Examples:*

(a) There was farmer. farmer had ox.
   Ans. There was a farmer. The farmer had an ox.

(b) This is car I bought last year.
   Ans. This is the car I bought last year:

(c) books on the table are mine.
   Ans. The books on the table are mine.

(d) boys were very naughty.
   Ans. The boys were very naughty.

1. I saw boy. boy was weeping.
2. There was king. king was very kind.
3. I have a car. car is very beautiful.
4. I saw some boys. boys were quarrelling.
5. This is pen I bought yesterday.
6. horses were very bad.
7. water is useful for life.
8. water of this well is dirty.
9. gold is metal.
10. gold of India is famous.
11. horses can run fast.
12. horses of Ram are very weak.
13. mango is tasty fruit.
14. mangoes are found in summer.
15. mangoes in the tree are not ripe.
16. cows of Ram are ill.
17. box was made of iron.
18. water in the pot is dirty.
20. Have you read all books?
21. Do you like tea or coffee?
22. I like tea of Assam.
23. dog is faithful animal.
24. dogs are four-footed animals.
25. dogs are mad.
26. I don’t like dogs of my neighbour.
27. dog is mine.
28. I am going to sell dog.
29. I want to buy dog.
30. Ram of Ramayana is ideal man.

EXERCISE 35

Direction: Use a, an or the where necessary. Put a cross mark (x) where no article is required.

Examples:
(a) moon shines in sky. The moon shines in the sky.
(b) poor are sad. The poor are sad.
(c) Ganges is long river. The Ganges is a long river.
(d) He is best boy in the class. He is the best boy in the class.
1. Himalayas is mountain.
2. Mount Everest is a peak.
3. They have come from West Indies.
4. Ganges is sacred river.
5. I have read Gita and Ramayana.
6. Sun sets in the west.
7. Moon is in sky.
8. Earth moves round sun.
9. I read Hindustan Times everyday.
10. Have you seen Tajmahal?
11. He can play on violin.
12. Red Fort is red.
13. U.S.A. is great country.
14. He was second boy.
15. Poor are honest.
16. Honesty is best policy.
17. He is best boy in the class.
18. I am going to theatre.
19. Headmaster is in office.
21. Mount Everest is highest peak of Himalayas.
22. Moon is smaller than earth.
23. Pacific Ocean is very deep.
24. Toofan Express is coming soon.
25. Today is fifth of May.
26. Bird can fly in sky.
27. She is most beautiful girl in the class.
28. Blind cannot see.
29. My father is university professor.
30. Hour is enough.

EXERCISE 36

Direction: Use a, an or the where necessary. Put a cross mark (×) where no article is required.

Examples:
(a) French is easy language. (×) French is an easy language.
(b) I play football. (×) I play football.
(c) It is Sunday today. (×) It is Sunday today.
(d) I like Holi. (×) I like Holi.
1. India is big country.
2. Do you know Urdu?
3. Mathematics is interesting subject.
4. Hindi is not easier than English.
5. March has thirty-one days.
6. Monday is first day of the week.
7. He is suffering from cholera.
8. Holi is coming soon.
9. It is very cold in winter.
10. Do you play cricket everyday?
11. Football is good game.
12. I like rice and curry.
13. I do not take lunch.
14. This is Ram’s book.
15. Deepawali is important festival in India.
16. We play badminton in evening.
17. Don’t tell lies. Speak truth.
19. Ant is very hard-working insect.
20. Look at picture.
21. I am learning English.
22. December is last month of the year.
23. I play chess.
24. Ramayana is religious book.
25. Rose is beautiful flower.
26. I bought horse, ox and buffalo.
27. Gold is costlier than silver.
28. Kalidas is Shakespeare of India.
29. He is one-eyed man.
30. Oxen are stronger than cows.
17. Verb Forms

андिकांश Verbs के पाँच रूप होते हैं —

1. \( V^1 \) Verb का Present Tense Form
   जैसे — go, eat, run, laugh, dance, etc.

2. \( V^2 \) Verb का Past Tense Form
   जैसे — went, ate, ran, laughed, etc.

3. \( V^3 \) Verb का Past Participle Form
   जैसे — gone, eaten, laughed, broken, etc.

4. \( V^4 \) Verb का Present Participle Form
   जैसे — going, eating, laughing, breaking, etc.

5. \( V^5 \) Verb का -s form
   जैसे — eats, runs, laughs, goes, does, etc.

कुछ Verbs के पाँचों रूपों को देखें —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( V^1 )</th>
<th>( V^2 )</th>
<th>( V^3 )</th>
<th>( V^4 )</th>
<th>( V^5 )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>goes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
<td>eating</td>
<td>eats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>running</td>
<td>runs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>sleeping</td>
<td>sleeps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cutting</td>
<td>cuts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. इन पाँचों रूपों को ध्यान से देखने पर पता चलता है कि Verb का मूल रूप \( V^1 \) है। उसमें -ing जोड़ने से \( V^4 \) और -s/es जोड़ने से \( V^5 \) प्राप्त होता है। जैसे —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( V^1 )</th>
<th>( V^4 )</th>
<th>( V^5 )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>goes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>eating</td>
<td>eats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laugh</td>
<td>laughing</td>
<td>laughs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>running</td>
<td>runs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cutting</td>
<td>cuts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. अधिकांश Verbs ऐसे हैं जिनके \( V^2 \) और \( V^3 \) का निर्माण \( V^1 \) में d/ed suffix से जोड़कर किया जाता है। इनके \( V^2 \) और \( V^3 \) same होते हैं। जैसे —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( V^1 )</th>
<th>( V^2 )</th>
<th>( V^3 )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laugh</td>
<td>laughed</td>
<td>laughed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>worked</td>
<td>worked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. कुछ Verbs ऐसे हैं जिनके \( V^2 \) और \( V^3 \) same होते हैं। जैसे —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>शब्द</th>
<th>समानता होने का तरीका</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td>helped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
<td>walked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
<td>played</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. कुछ Verbs ऐसे हैं जिनके \( V^1 \), \( V^2 \) और \( V^3 \) same होते हैं। जैसे —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>कार्य</th>
<th>( V^1 )</th>
<th>( V^2 )</th>
<th>( V^3 )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. कुछ Verbs ऐसे हैं जिनके \( V^2 \) और \( V^3 \) मिला होते हैं। \( V^2 \) और \( V^3 \) forms की याद रखना पड़ता है। जैसे —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>कार्य</th>
<th>( V^1 )</th>
<th>( V^2 )</th>
<th>( V^3 )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arise</td>
<td>arose</td>
<td>arisen</td>
<td>arisen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abuse</td>
<td>abused</td>
<td>abusered</td>
<td>abusered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>answer</td>
<td>answered</td>
<td>answered</td>
<td>answered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ask</td>
<td>asked</td>
<td>asked</td>
<td>asked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrive</td>
<td>arrived</td>
<td>arrived</td>
<td>arrived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advise</td>
<td>advised</td>
<td>advised</td>
<td>advised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

अब हम यहाँ कुछ महत्वपूर्ण Verbs के \( V^1 \), \( V^2 \) और \( V^3 \) forms दे रहे हैं जिन्हें आप हमेशा याद रखें। बिना याद किए आपका काम नहीं चलेगा।
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hindi</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Hindi</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be (होना)</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>been</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat (पीटना)</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become (होना)</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin (शुरू करना)</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite (लोंग से काटना)</td>
<td>bit</td>
<td>bitten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break (लोटना)</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burn (जलना, जलना)</td>
<td>burnt</td>
<td>burnt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow (बहना)</td>
<td>blew</td>
<td>blown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy (खरीदना)</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build (बनाना)</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring (लाना)</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bind (बौधना)</td>
<td>bound</td>
<td>bound</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beg (भीख मांगना)</td>
<td>begged</td>
<td>begged</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bless (आशीर्वाद देना)</td>
<td>blessed</td>
<td>blessed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call (पुकारना)</td>
<td>called</td>
<td>called</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come (आना)</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>climb (चढ़ना)</td>
<td>climbed</td>
<td>climbed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch (पकड़ना)</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut (काटना)</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close (बंद करना)</td>
<td>closed</td>
<td>closed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cry (चिल्लाना)</td>
<td>cried</td>
<td>cried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cook (भोजन पकाना)</td>
<td>cooked</td>
<td>cooked</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean (साफ करना)</td>
<td>cleaned</td>
<td>cleaned</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose (चुनना)</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry (ढोना)</td>
<td>carried</td>
<td>carried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creep (रंगना)</td>
<td>crept</td>
<td>crept</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deal (बताव करना)</td>
<td>dealt</td>
<td>dealt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dig (खोदना)</td>
<td>dug</td>
<td>dug</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do (करना)</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw (खीचना)</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink (पीना)</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive (चलाना)</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>die (मरना)</td>
<td>died</td>
<td>died</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>English</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream (स्वप्न देखना)</td>
<td>dreamt</td>
<td>dreamt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dry (सुखना)</td>
<td>dried</td>
<td>dried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drop (गिराना)</td>
<td>dropped</td>
<td>dropped</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat (खाना)</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enter (प्रवेश करना)</td>
<td>entered</td>
<td>entered</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elect (चुनना)</td>
<td>elected</td>
<td>elected</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall (गिरना)</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feed (खिलाना)</td>
<td>fed</td>
<td>fed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight (लड़ना)</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find (पाना)</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly (उड़ना, उड़ना)</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget (भूलना)</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fry (लना)</td>
<td>fried</td>
<td>fried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel (महसूस करना)</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get (पाना)</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give (देना)</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go (जाना)</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow (उपजना, उपजना)</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang (लटकाना)</td>
<td>hung</td>
<td>hung</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang (फौंसी देना)</td>
<td>hanged</td>
<td>hanged</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear (चुनना)</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help (मदद करना)</td>
<td>helped</td>
<td>helped</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide (छिपाना)</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td>hidden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have (रखना)</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit (चोट करना)</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold (पकड़ना)</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt (चोट पहुँचाना)</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hope (आशा करना)</td>
<td>hoped</td>
<td>hoped</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jump (कूदना)</td>
<td>jumped</td>
<td>jumped</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep (रखना)</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know (जानना)</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>live (रहना)</td>
<td>lived</td>
<td>lived</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn (सीखना)</td>
<td>learnt</td>
<td>learnt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hindi Verb</td>
<td>English Verb</td>
<td>Hindi Verb</td>
<td>English Verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave (छोड़ना)</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>leave (छोड़ना)</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look (देखना)</td>
<td>looked</td>
<td>look (देखना)</td>
<td>looked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love (प्यार करना)</td>
<td>loved</td>
<td>love (प्यार करना)</td>
<td>loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose (खोना)</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>lose (खोना)</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend (उधार लेना)</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lend (उधार लेना)</td>
<td>lent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leap (कूदना)</td>
<td>leapt</td>
<td>leap (कूदना)</td>
<td>leapt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead (नेतृत्व करना)</td>
<td>led</td>
<td>lead (नेतृत्व करना)</td>
<td>led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make (बनाना)</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>make (बनाना)</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet (मिलना)</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>meet (मिलना)</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marry (शादी करना)</td>
<td>married</td>
<td>marry (शादी करना)</td>
<td>married</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mistake (गलती करना)</td>
<td>mistaken</td>
<td>mistake (गलती करना)</td>
<td>mistaken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>open (खोलना)</td>
<td>opened</td>
<td>open (खोलना)</td>
<td>opened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play (खेलना)</td>
<td>played</td>
<td>play (खेलना)</td>
<td>played</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put (रखना)</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put (रखना)</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay (चुकाना)</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>pay (चुकाना)</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quarrel (शिकंदा)</td>
<td>quarrelled</td>
<td>quarrel (शिकंदा)</td>
<td>quarrelled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read (पढ़ना)</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>read (पढ़ना)</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride (चढ़ना)</td>
<td>ridden</td>
<td>ride (चढ़ना)</td>
<td>ridden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring (बजाना, बजना)</td>
<td>rung</td>
<td>ring (बजाना, बजना)</td>
<td>rung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rise (उठना, उगना)</td>
<td>risen</td>
<td>rise (उठना, उगना)</td>
<td>risen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see (देखना)</td>
<td>looked</td>
<td>see (देखना)</td>
<td>looked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say (कहना)</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>say (कहना)</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell (बेचना)</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sell (बेचना)</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show (दिखाना)</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>show (दिखाना)</td>
<td>showed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>study (अध्ययन करना)</td>
<td>studied</td>
<td>study (अध्ययन करना)</td>
<td>studied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set (ठीक करना)</td>
<td>set</td>
<td>set</td>
<td>set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shake (हिलाना)</td>
<td>shook</td>
<td>shake (हिलाना)</td>
<td>shook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shine (चमकना)</td>
<td>shone</td>
<td>shine (चमकना)</td>
<td>shone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoot (गोली मारना)</td>
<td>shot</td>
<td>shoot (गोली मारना)</td>
<td>shot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut (बंद करना)</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut (बंद करना)</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing (गाना गाना)</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sing (गाना गाना)</td>
<td>sang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sink (होना)</td>
<td>sank</td>
<td>sink (होना)</td>
<td>sank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb (Hindi)</td>
<td>Form 1</td>
<td>Form 2</td>
<td>Form 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep (सोना)</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>smelt</td>
<td>spoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smell (सुंडहना)</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak (बोलना)</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td>stole</td>
<td>swam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend (खर्च करना)</td>
<td>stole</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spoil (बर्बाद करना)</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td>swed</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand (खड़ा होना)</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal (चुराना)</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim (तैरना)</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take (लेना)</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach (पढ़ना)</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear (फांड़ना)</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell (कहना)</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think (सोचना)</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw (फेंकना)</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk (बात करना)</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thank (धन्यवाद देना)</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use (प्रयोग करना)</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand (समझना)</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work (काम करना)</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>want (चाहना)</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear (पहनना)</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weep (रोना)</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win (जीतना)</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write (लिखना)</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walk (टहलना)</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wash (धोना)</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXERCISE 37**

*Direction: Write down the $V^1$, $V^2$, $V^3$, $V^4$ and $V^5$ forms of the following verbs —

ask, beat, break, buy, come, do, fall, feel, grow, hope, learn, put, burst, read, see, sell, set, hit, open, stand, tell, weep, steal.*
18. Tense

* The tense stands for a verb form or series of verb forms used to express a time relation:

- is reading / is coming / is playing — Present Progressive Tense
- has been waiting / has been raining — Present Perfect Continuous Tense
- saw / played / ate / did — Simple Past Tense
- will go / shall come / shall eat — Simple Future Tense

अंग्रेजी में Tense के तीन भेद हैं —
1. Present Tense
2. Past Tense
3. Future Tense

पुन: प्रयोग के चार भेद हैं। Present Tense के चारों भेद इस प्रकार हैं —
(a) Simple Present Tense
(b) Present Progressive Tense/Present Continuous Tense
(c) Present Perfect Tense
(d) Present Perfect Continuous Tense

इसी तरह Past Tense और Future Tense के भी चार-चार भेद हैं। अब इन चारों Tenses का अलग-अलग विस्तारपूर्वक अध्ययन करें।

1. SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE

[ अभी हम सभी Tenses के सिर्फ Affirmative Sentences की चर्चा करेंगे, Negative और Interrogative Sentences की चर्चा आगे के Chapters में करेंगे।]

इन वाक्यों को देखें —

I am a boy. (मैं एक लड़का हूँ।)
We are students. (हमलोग छात्र हैं।)
The boy is ill. (लड़का बीमार है।)
I have a car. (मुझे एक कार है।)
She has a cow. (उसके पास एक गाय है।)
The cow eats grass. (गाय थास खाती है।)
They play football. (वे लॉग फुटबॉल खेलते हैं।)

इन वाक्यों में आए Verb am, is, are, have, has, eats और play Simple Present Form में प्रयुक्त हैं। ऐसे Simple Present Form में प्रयुक्त Verbs को Simple Present Tense में होना समझा जाता है।

इस Tense के वाक्यों में Subject + Verb की बनावट होती है — Subject + Verb in Simple Present Form (either singular or plural).

कहाँ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होगा और कहाँ Plural Verb का, इसके लिए आगे दी गई सारणी को ध्यान में रखें।

Note 1. हिंदी के वाक्यों में जब मुख्य क्रिया के रूप में हूं, है, हो या हैं रहता है या थालु + ता हूं / ती हूं / ते है / ते हो / ती हो / ता है / ती है रहता है, तब उन वाक्यों की क्रियाओं का अनुवाद प्रायः Simple Present Tense में होता है। उदाहरण के लिए ऊपर दिए गए वाक्यों को देखें और अनुवाद के लिए इस सारणी को ध्यान में रखें।

सारणी (Subject + Verb)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Subject in Singular Number</th>
<th>Subject in Plural Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Person</td>
<td>I am/I have/I eat.</td>
<td>We are/We have/We eat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Person</td>
<td>You are/You have/You eat.</td>
<td>You are/You have/You eat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Person</td>
<td>He is/He has/He eats.</td>
<td>They are/They have/They eat.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note 2. He के स्थान पर She, It या कोई भी उपयुक्त Singular Subject आ सकता है तथा They के स्थान पर कोई भी उपयुक्त Plural Subject आ सकता है।

Note 3. जब Main Verb के रूप में am/is/are/have/has का प्रयोग होता है, तब इसके बाद Noun या कोई अन्य उपयुक्त Complement का आना आवश्यक हो जाता है। जैसे —

He is ready. I am a student. I have a pen.

Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग —

1. इस Tense का प्रयोग मुख्यतः आदत या स्वभावजनित कार्य-व्यापार (habitual actions) का बोध कराने में होता है। जैसे —
   I walk in the morning. (मैं सुबह में टहलता हूँ।) ~ आदत / स्वभाव
   The sun rises in the east. (सूर्य पूर्व में उगता है।) ~ आदत / स्वभाव
   Milk is sweet. (दूध मीठा होता है।) ~ स्वभाव

2. इस Tense का प्रयोग स्थायी या सामान्य कार्य-व्यापार, संबंध, अधिकार, निहित गुण इत्यादि का बोध कराने के लिए भी होता है। जैसे —
Two and two is four. (दो और दो चार होता है।) ~ स्थायी कार्य-व्यापार
She is my mother. (वह मेरी माँ है।) ~ संबंध
I have a car. (मेरे पास एक कार है।) ~ अधिकार
The rose is beautiful. (गुलाब सुंदर होता है।) ~ निहित गुण

Note 1. इस Tense से यह स्पष्ट नहीं होता है कि कोई कार्य-व्यापार बोलने समय हो रहा है या नहीं। ऐसे स्पष्टीकरण के लिए Present Progressive Tense का प्रयोग होता है।

I take tea but this time I am taking coffee.
मैं चाय पीता हूँ, पानी में चाय पीया करता हूँ — ऐसी मेरी आदत है, परंतु इस समय में कोई पी रहा हूँ।

Note 2. Tense के concept को और अधिक clear करने के लिए इस chapter के अध्ययन के साथ-साथ Tense पर आधारित अनुवाद भी बनाएं। इसके लिए Oxford Junior English Translation या Oxford Current English Translation देखें।

2. PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE

इन वाक्यों को देखें —

I am eating. (मैं खा रहा हूँ।)
The boy is jumping. (लड़का उछल-कूद रहा है।)
They are dancing. (वे लोग नाच रहे हैं।)
Sita is singing. (सीता गा रही है।)

इन वाक्यों में आए Verbs am eating, is jumping, are dancing और is singing का Verb Form am/is/are + Present Participle है। ऐसे Verb Form में प्रयुक्त Verbs को Present Progressive Tense में होना समझा जाता है। इस Tense के वाक्यों में Subject + Verb की बनावट होती है —

Subject + am/is/are + V-ing.

Note: हिंदी के वाक्यों में इस Tense की किया के अंत में प्रायः रहा हूँ / रही हूँ / रहे हैं / रही हो / रहा है / रही है रहता है और इसके पहले कोई भूतकालिक समयसूचक शब्द प्रयुक्त नहीं रहता है। अनुवाद के लिए कवर्ते के बाद am/is/are दिया जाता है और उसके बाद V + ing. उदाहरण के लिए उपर दिए गए वाक्यों के देखें और अनुवाद के लिए इस सारणी को ध्यान में रखें।

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Subject in Singular Number</th>
<th>Subject in Plural Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Person</td>
<td>I am going.</td>
<td>We are going.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Person</td>
<td>You are going.</td>
<td>You are going.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Person</td>
<td>He/She/It/Ram is going.</td>
<td>They/The boys are going.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Present Progressive Tense का प्रयोग—

1. इस Tense का प्रयोग तालकालिक वर्तमान (immediate present / now) का बोध कराने के लिए होता है, अर्थात् क्रिया वर्तमान समय में बोलते या लिखते वक्त संपन्न हो रही है। जैसे—
   I am reading. (पढ़ने का काम चल रहा है।)
   He is sleeping. (सोना जारी है।)
   He is playing in the room. (अभी खेल रहा है।)

2. इस Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे काम के होने या चलू रहने का भी बोध कराने में होता है जो अभी तक काल नहीं हो रहा है (इसी क्षण अर्थात् बोलते समय), परंतु अभी के समय के आस-पास या इन दिनों हो रहा है। जैसे—
   He is reading mathematics these days.
   वह आजकल गणित पढ़ रहा है — बोलते समय नहीं, परंतु आजकल — about this time

3. इस Tense का प्रयोग भविष्य में होनेवाले कार्यक्रम/निर्णय/पूर्वनिधारित योजना तथा कार्य करने के इरादे या संभावना को भी व्यक्त करने में होता है। जैसे—
   She is coming tomorrow. (यह कल आ रही है।) ~ पूर्वनिधारित योजना
   I am going to buy a car. (मैं एक कार खरीदने जा रहा हूँ।) ~ भविष्य में कार्य करने का इरादा।

3. PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

इन वाक्यों को देखें —

I have eaten. (मैं खा चुका हूँ / मैंने खाया है।)
We have played. (हमलोग खेल चुके हैं / हमलोगों ने खेला है।)
You have done it. (तुमने इसे किया है / तुम इसे कर चुके हो।)
The sun has risen. (सूरज उग चुका है / सूरज उग गया है।)

इन वाक्यों में आए Verbs have eaten, have played, have done और has risen का Verb Form have/has + Past Participle of the Main Verb है। ऐसे Verb Form में प्रयुक्त Verbs की Present Perfect Tense में होना समझा जाता है।

इस Tense के वाक्यों में Subject + Verb की बनावट होती है —

Subject + have / has + V3.

Note: हिंदी के वाक्यों में इस Tense की क्रियाओं के अंत में चुका हूँ / चुकी हूँ / चुके हैं / चुके हो / चुकी है / चुकी है अथवा यह हूँ / ई हूँ / ए हैं / ए हो / या है / ई है रहता है। अंग्रेजी अनुवाद में Subject के बाद have/has दिया जाता है और उसके बाद क्रिया का Past Participle Form (V3) | जब Subject Third Person
Singular Number में रहता है, तब has + V<sup>3</sup> लगता है। अन्य Subjects के साथ have + V<sup>3</sup> लगता है। उदाहरण के लिए पिछले पृष्ठ पर दिए गए वाक्यों को देखें और इस सारणी को ध्यान में रखें।

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Subject in Singular Number</th>
<th>Subject in Plural Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Person</td>
<td>I have eaten.</td>
<td>We have eaten.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Person</td>
<td>You have eaten.</td>
<td>You have eaten.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Person</td>
<td>He/She/It/Ram has eaten.</td>
<td>They/The boys have eaten.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Present Perfect Tense का प्रयोग—**

इस Tense का प्रयोग मुख्यतः ऐसे कार्य-व्यापार का बोध कराने के लिए होता है जो भूतकाल में समाप्त हो गया, परंतु उसका प्रभाव या संबंध वर्तमान समय से है। जैसे—

(a) I have eaten. (मैंने खा लिया है।) खाने का काम भूतकाल में समाप्त हो गया, परंतु उसका प्रभाव अभी भी मौजूद है — वेट भरा हुआ है और अभी खाने की इच्छा नहीं है।

(b) He has broken his leg. (उसने अपनी टॉग तोड़ ली है।) टॉग टूटने का काम भूतकाल में समाप्त हो गया, परंतु उसका प्रभाव अभी भी मौजूद है और उस घटना का संबंध वर्तमान से है — उसकी टॉग अभी भी टूटी हुई है और अभी भी वह चलने की स्थिति में नहीं है।

**4. PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE**

इन वाक्यों को देखें—

I have been reading for two hours. (मैंने दो घंटों से पढ़ रहा हूँ।)

She has been sleeping since 9 o'clock. (वह नी बजे से सो रही है।)

It has been raining since morning. (सुबह से वर्षा हो रही है।)

The boys have been playing. (लड़के खेलते रहे हैं।)

She has been living here for ten years. (वह दस वर्षों से यहाँ रह रही है।)

इन वाक्यों में आए Verbs, have been reading, has been sleeping, has been raining, have been playing और has been living का Verb Form have been/has been + Present Participle है। ऐसे Verb Form को Present Perfect Continuous Tense में होना समझा जाता है।

इस Tense के वाक्यों में Subject + Verb की बनावट होती है—

Subject + have been/has been + V-ing.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Subject in Singular Number</th>
<th>Subject in Plural Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st Person</td>
<td>I have been eating.</td>
<td>We have been eating.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd Person</td>
<td>You have been eating.</td>
<td>You have been eating.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd Person</td>
<td>He has been eating.</td>
<td>They have been eating.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** जब हिंदी क्रियाओं के अंत में रहा हूँ/ रही हूँ/ रही है/ रहे हैं/ रहे हो/ रही हो/ रहा है/ रही है रहता है और इनके पहले भूतकालिक समयसूचक शब्द (जैसे — एक पंडे से, दो घंटों से, दो वर्षों से, चूँकि से, 9 बजे से, इत्यादि) रहता है, तब इन क्रियाओं का अनुवाद Present Perfect Continuous Tense में होता है। जब भूतकालिक समयसूचक शब्द का प्रयोग नहीं रहता है, तब क्रिया के अंत में ता रहा हूँ/ ता रही हूँ/ ता है/ ता रही है/ ता रहे हैं/ ता रहे हो/ ता रहा हो/ ता रही हो रहता है। उदाहरण के लिए पिछले पृष्ठ पर दिये गए वाक्यों को देखें।

**For/Since का प्रयोग**

कुछ वाक्यों में समयसूचक शब्दों के पहले for/since का प्रयोग होता है।

**For का प्रयोग** — जब अवधि (अर्थात कितनी देर से/कितने समय से) दी रहती है, तब for का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —

एक घंटे से for an hour  बहुत दिनों से for several days  
चार दिनों से for four days तीन वर्षों से for three years

**Since का प्रयोग** — जब निश्चित समय (किस वक्त/किस दिन/किस साल — शुरु होने का समय — starting point) दिया रहता है, तब since का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —

सोमवार से since Monday सुबह से since morning  
1980 ई. से since 1980 बापन से since childhood  
9 बजे से since 9 o’clock गत साल से since last year

**Present Perfect Continuous Tense का प्रयोग**

इस Tense का प्रयोग मुख्यतः उस कार्य-व्यापार को व्यक्त करने के लिए होता है जो भूतकाल में प्रारंभ हुआ और अभी भी जारी है। जैसे —

He has been living in this town for ten years. (वह दस वर्षों से इस शहर में रह रहा है।) ~ उसने वह वर्ष पहले रहना शुरू किया और अभी भी रह रहा है।

5. **SIMPLE PAST TENSE**

इन वाक्यों को देखें —

I was happy. (मैं खुश था।)  
You were sad. (तू मुझे उदास था।)
They were leaders. (वे लोग नेता थे)
Ram had a horse. (राम के पास एक घोड़ा था)
You had a cow. (तुम्हारे पास एक गाय थी)
I went there. (मैं वहाँ गया / मैं वहाँ गया था)
He wrote a letter. (उसने पत्र लिखा / उसने पत्र लिखा था)

इन वाक्यों में आए Verbs was, were, had, went और wrote के Verb Form पर विचार करने से पता चलता है कि वे सभी Simple Past Form में प्रयुक्त हैं। ऐसे Verb Form में प्रयुक्त Verbs को Simple Past Tense में होना समझा जाता है।

इस Tense के वाक्यों में Subject + Verb की बनावट होती है — Subject + Simple Past Form (V²).

**Note 1.** हिंदी के वाक्यों में इस Tense की किया का रूप था / थी / थे / थीं या थातु + आ / ई / ए + (था / थी / थीं / थे) होता है। अंग्रेजी अनुवाद के लिए Subject के बाद V² का प्रयोग किया जाता है। उदाहरण के लिए ऊपर लिखे गए वाक्यों को देखें और इस सारणी को ध्यान में रखें।

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Subject in Singular Number</th>
<th>Subject in Plural Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st Person</td>
<td>I was/I had/I ate.</td>
<td>We were/We had/We ate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd Person</td>
<td>You were/You had/You ate.</td>
<td>You were/You had/You ate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd Person</td>
<td>He was/He had/He ate.</td>
<td>They were/They had/They ate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note 2.** जब Verb के रूप में was/were/had का प्रयोग करना होता है, तब इसके बाद noun या कोई अन्य up* prefix complement (पूरक) देना अनिवार्य हो जाता है। जैसे —

I was ill. They were teachers. I had a horse.

**Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग —**

1. इस Tense का प्रयोग मुख्यतः ऐसे कार्य-व्यापार के लिए होता है, जो भूतकाल में समाप्त हो गया। जैसे —

I met him yesterday. (मैं उससे कल मिला था)
He died in 1980. (बस 1980 में मरे)
He taught us. (उन्होंने हमलोगों को पढ़ाया)

2. इस Tense का प्रयोग Past Tense से संबंधित घटनाओं या स्थितियों का वर्णन करने में भी होता है। जैसे —

It was 1957. (सन 1957 था)
We were happy. (हमलोग खुश थे)
It was very hot. (बहुत गर्मी थी)

Past time related situations.
3. This Tense is used to express actions that occurred in the past. The meaning is such that the action was in progress at a particular time.

I used to smoke. (पूर्वी समय का कार्य था।)
He always helped me. (वे हमेशा मेरी मदद करते थे।)

6. PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE

इन वाक्यों पर विचार करें—
I was going to market. (मैं बाजार जा रहा था।)
She was dancing. (वह नृत्य कर रही थी।)
Your brothers were sleeping. (आपके भाई लोग सो रहे थे।)
It was raining. (वर्षा हो रही थी।)

इन वाक्यों में आए Verbs was going, was dancing, were sleeping और was raining के Verb Form पर विचार करने से पता चलता है कि इनका Verb Form was/were + Present Participle है। ऐसे Verb Form में प्रयुक्त Verbs का Past Progressive Tense में होना समझा जाता है।

इस Tense के वाक्यों में Subject + Verb की बनावट होती है—

Subject + was/were + V-ing.

Note: हिंदी के वाक्यों में इस Tense की किया के अंत में रहा था / रही थी / रहे थे / रही थीं रहता है तथा वाक्यों के अंग्रेजी अनुवाद में Subject के बाद was / were आता है और उसके बाद किया का V-ing form. उदाहरण के लिए ऊपर दिए गए वाक्यों को देखें। कहाँ was और कहाँ were का प्रयोग होगा, यह इस तालिका से स्पष्ट है।

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Subject in Singular Number</th>
<th>Subject in Plural Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st Person</td>
<td>I was eating.</td>
<td>We were eating.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd Person</td>
<td>You were eating.</td>
<td>You were eating.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd Person</td>
<td>He/She/It/Ram was eating.</td>
<td>They were eating.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Past Progressive Tense का प्रयोग—

इस Tense का प्रयोग मुख्यत: भूतकाल में किसी कार्य-व्यापार के जारी रहने का बीच करने के लिए होता है। जैसे—

He was sleeping. (वह सो रहा था।)
They were talking. (वे बातें कर रहे थे।)
It was raining. (लगा हो रही थी।)
He was running. (वह दौड़ रहा था।)
7. PAST PERFECT TENSE

इन वाक्यों की देखें—

(a) I had reached school before the bell rang.
(बंदी बजने के पहले मैं स्कूल पहुंच चुका था।)

(b) The thief had fled away before the police came.
(पुलिस के आने के पहले चोर भाग चुका था।)

(c) The patient had died before the doctor came.
(डॉक्टर के आने के पहले रोगी मर चुका था।)

इन वाक्यों में आए Verbs had reached, had fled और had died के Verb Form पर विचार करने से पता चलता है कि इनका Verb Form had + Past Participle है। ऐसे Verb Form में प्रयुक्त Verbs को Past Perfect Tense में होना समझा जाता है।

इस Tense के वाक्यों में संबंधित Subject + Verb की बनावट होती है—

Subject + had + V³.

Note: हिंदी के वाक्यों में इस Tense की क्रिया के अंत में चुका था / चुकी थी / चुके थे / चुकी थी रहता है। अंग्रेजी अनुवाद के लिए Subject के बाद had दिया जाता है और had के बाद Main Verb का Past Participle Form। उदाहरण के लिए, उपर दिए गए वाक्यों को देखें जिनके प्राप्त भाग में Past Perfect Tense प्रयुक्त है।

### सारणी

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>व्यक्ति</th>
<th>विषय में सौंदर्यीपक संख्या</th>
<th>विषय में संख्यात्मक संख्या</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st Person</td>
<td>I had eaten.</td>
<td>We had eaten.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd Person</td>
<td>You had eaten.</td>
<td>You had eaten.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd Person</td>
<td>He/she/it/they had eaten.</td>
<td>They/The boys had eaten.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect Tense का प्रयोग—

1. यदि भूत्तकाल में दो कार्य हुए हों और एक कार्य दूसरे कार्य के पहले पूर्णतः समाप्त हो गया हो, तो पहले समाप्त होनेवाले कार्य के लिए Past Perfect Tense की क्रिया का प्रयोग होगा और बाद में समाप्त होनेवाले कार्य के लिए Simple Past Tense की क्रिया का प्रयोग। जैसे—

डॉक्टर के आने के पहले रोगी मर चुका था। इस वाक्य से यह स्पष्ट है कि भूत्तकाल में दो काम हुए— (a) रोगी का मरना और (b) डॉक्टर का आना। ‘रोगी का मरना’ पहले संपन्न हुआ। अतः इसके लिए Past Perfect Tense की क्रिया का प्रयोग होगा और ‘डॉक्टर का आना’ बाद में संपन्न हुआ। अतः इसके लिए Past Indefinite Tense की क्रिया का प्रयोग होगा। इस प्रकार अभीष्ट वाक्य का अनुवाद होगा—

The patient had died before the doctor came.
2. आपने Past Perfect Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे वाक्यों में देखा है जिनके दो भाग हैं। कभी-कभी ऐसे वाक्यों के दो भाग नहीं होते हैं, परंतु प्रसंग (context) से स्पष्ट रहता है कि अभीष्ट कार्य दूसरे कार्य के बहुत पहले ही समाप्त हो चुका था। ऐसे वाक्यों में दूसरा कार्य लुप्त (silent) या understood रहता है। ऐसे वाक्यों में भी Past Perfect Tense की क्रिया का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

(a) I had already completed my work.
(b) She had reached much earlier.
(c) I had never been to Delhi before.

3. Past Perfect Tense का प्रयोग अनेक परिस्थितियों में Present Perfect Tense के Past Equivalent के रूप में भी होता है। जैसे—

(a) I have been ill for ten days.  Present Perfect Tense
    I had been ill for ten days.  Past Perfect Tense
(b) I have served in the army since 1998.  Present Perfect Tense
    I had served in the army since 1998.  Past Perfect Tense

8. PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

इन वाक्यों को देखें—

I had been running. (मैं चौड़ा रहा था।)
He had been working since 2005. (वह 2005 के से काम कर रहा था।)
It had been raining since morning. (लूबर से वर्षा हो रही थी।)

इन वाक्यों में आए Verbs had been running, had been working, had been raining और had been living के Verb Form पर विचार करने से पता चलता है कि इनका Verb Form had been + present participle है। ऐसे Verb Form में प्रयुक्त Verbs की Past Perfect Continuous Tense में होना समझा जाता है।

इस Tense के वाक्यों में Subject + Verb की बनावट होती है—

Subject + had been + V-ing.

Note: हिंदी के वाक्यों में इस Tense की क्रिया के अंत में रहा था / रही थी / रहे थे / रही थी रहता है और क्रिया के पहले भूतकालिक समयसूचक शब्द भी रहता है। जब भूतकालिक समयसूचक शब्द नहीं रहता है, तब क्रिया के अंत में ता रहा था /
सारणी

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Subject in Singular Number</th>
<th>Subject in Plural Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st Person</td>
<td>I had been eating.</td>
<td>We had been eating.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd Person</td>
<td>You had been eating.</td>
<td>You had been eating.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd Person</td>
<td>He had been eating.</td>
<td>They had been eating.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Past Perfect Continuous Tense का प्रयोग —

इस Tense का प्रयोग मुख्यतः: ऐसे कार्य-व्यापार का बोध कराने के लिए होता है, जो भूतकाल में कुछ समय या बहुत समय तक जारी था। जैसे —

They had been fighting for ten years. (वे लोग दस वर्षों से लड़ रहे थे।)
I had been playing since morning. (मैं सुबह से खेल रहा था।)

9. SIMPLE FUTURE TENSE

इन वाक्यों को देखें —

I shall be a leader. (मैं नेता बनूँगा।)
You will be happy. (तुम खुश रहोगे।)
Sita will dance tomorrow. (सीता कल नृत्य करेगी।)
I shall help you. (मैं तुम्हारी मदद करूँगा।)
They will serve the nation. (वे लोग देश की सेवा करेंगे।)
They will come soon. (वे लोग ब्रीड आएंगे।)

इन वाक्यों में आए Verbs shall be, will be, will dance, shall help, will serve और will come के Verb Form पर विचार करने से पता चलता है कि इनका Verb Form shall/will + V1 है। ऐसे Verb Form में प्रयुक्त Verbs को Simple Future Tense में होना समझा जाता है। इस Tense के वाक्यों में Subject + Verb की बनावट होती है —

Subject + shall / will + V1.

Note: जब हिंदी वाक्य की किया का रूप धातु + ौंगा/ौंगी/एगा/एगी रहता है, तब अभिधेय किया का अंग्रेजी अनुवाद Simple Future Tense में होता है। वाक्य के अनुवाद के लिए Subject के बाद shall/will दिया जाता है और उसके बाद V1 का प्रयोग होता है। उदाहरण के लिए ऊपर दिए गए वाक्यों को देखें और अनुवाद के लिए आगे दी गई सारणी को ध्यान में रखें।
सारणी

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Subject in Singular Number</th>
<th>Subject in Plural Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st Person</td>
<td>I shall eat.</td>
<td>We shall eat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd Person</td>
<td>You will eat.</td>
<td>You will eat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd Person</td>
<td>He/She/It/Ram will eat.</td>
<td>They/The boys will eat.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Simple Future Tense का प्रयोग —

1. Simple Future Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे कार्य-व्यापार के लिए होता है, जो भविष्य में सामान्य रूप से होगा। जैसे —

I shall go to Patna tomorrow. (मैं कल पटना जाऊँगा।)
I shall appear at the examination next year. (मैं अगले साल परीक्षा हूँगा।)

2. इस Tense का प्रयोग हच्छा (will), संकल्प (determination), चेतावनी (threat/command), इरादा (intention), इत्यादि का बोध कराने के लिए भी होता है। जैसे —

I will serve the nation. (मैं देश की सेवा करूँगा।)
I will never tell a lie. (मैं कभी झूठ नहीं बोलूंगा।)
You shall not cheat her again. (तुम उसे दोबारा नहीं ठगोंगे।)
You shall come in time. (तुम समय पर आओंगे।)

10. FUTURE PROGRESSIVE TENSE

इन वाक्यों को देखें —

I shall be playing. (मैं खेलता रहूँगा।)
We shall be dancing. (हमलोग नाचते रहेंगे।)
She will be waiting. (वह इंतजार करती रहेगी।)
They will be teaching. (वे लोग पढ़ाते रहेंगे।)

इन वाक्यों में आए Verbs shall be playing, shall be dancing, will be waiting और will be teaching के Verb Form पर विचार करने से पता चलता है कि इनका Verb Form shall/will+be+Present Participle है। ऐसे Verb Form में प्रयुक्त Verbs को Future Continuous Tense में होना समझा जाता है।

इस Tense के वाक्यों में Subject + Verb की बनावट होती है —

Subject + shall / will + be + V-ing.

Note: हिंदी के वाक्यों में इस Tense की क्रिया के अंत में ता रहूँगा / ते रहेंगे / ता रहेगा / ते रहेगी रहता है। अंग्रेजी अनुवाद के लिए Subject के बाद shall be / will be प्रयुक्त होता है और उसके बाद Main Verb का V-ing form, उदाहरण के लिए ऊपर दिए गए वाक्यों को देखें और आगे दी गई सारणी की ध्यान में रखें।
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Subject in Singular Number</th>
<th>Subject in Plural Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st Person</td>
<td>I shall be eating.</td>
<td>We shall be eating.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd Person</td>
<td>You will be eating.</td>
<td>You will be eating.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd Person</td>
<td>He will be eating.</td>
<td>They will be eating.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Progressive Tense का प्रयोग**

इस Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे कार्य-व्यापार का बोध कराने के लिए होता है, जो परिश्वम में किसी खास वक्त पर होता रहेगा। जैसे —

He will be sleeping then. (तब वह सोता रहेगा।)

I shall be staying there. (मैं वहाँ रुका हुआ रहेगा।)

**11. FUTURE PERFECT TENSE**

इन वाक्यों को देखें —

I shall have played. (मैं खेल चुकेगा।)

They will have finished the work. (वे काम समाप्त कर चुकेंगे।)

Sita will have danced. (सीता नाच चुकेगी।)

You will have cut the trees. (तुम पेड़ काट चुकेंगे।)

इन वाक्यों में आए Verbs shall have played, will have finished, will have danced और will have cut के Verb Form पर विचार करने से पता चलता है कि इनका Verb Form shall/will + have + V³ है। ऐसे Verb Form में प्रयुक्त Verbs को Future Perfect Tense में होना समझा जाता है।

इस Tense के वाक्यों में Subject + Verb की बनावट होती है —

Subject + shall / will + have + V³.

**Note:** हिंदी के वाक्यों में इस Tense की क्रियाओं के अंत में प्रयोग: चुकेगा / चुकेगे / चुकेगा / चुका रहेगा / चुकी रहेगी रहता है। ऐसे वाक्यों के अंग्रेजी अनुवाद में Subject के बाद shall/will + have + past participle of the main verb का प्रयोग होता है। उदाहरण के लिए ऊपर दिए गए वाक्यों की देखें और इस सारणी को ध्यान में रखें।

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Subject in Singular Number</th>
<th>Subject in Plural Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st Person</td>
<td>I shall have eaten.</td>
<td>We shall have eaten.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd Person</td>
<td>You will have eaten.</td>
<td>You will have eaten.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd Person</td>
<td>He will have eaten.</td>
<td>They will have eaten.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Future Perfect Tense का प्रयोग—
इस Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे कार्य-व्यापार के लिए होता है, जो भविष्य में किसी निर्धारित समय तक समाप्त हो चुका रहेगा।
(a) I shall have finished the job by that time.
(मैं उस समय तक काम को समाप्त कर चुकेगा।)
(b) He will have come by ten o’clock.
(वह उस बजे तक आ चुकेगा।)
(c) The patient will have died before the doctor comes.
(डॉक्टर के आने के पहले रोगी मर चुकेगा।)

Note: ध्यान दें कि शर्तबाले उपवाक्य में Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग हुआ है।

12. FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE
इन वाक्यों को देखें—
(a) I shall have been playing from morning.
(मैं चुंबक से खेलता रहूंगा।)
(b) We shall have been working from 2022.
(हमलोग 2022 ई० से काम करते रहेंगे।)
(c) She will have been waiting for five years.
(वह पैंच वर्षों से इंतजार करती रहेंगी।)
(d) The boys will have been reading for an hour.
(लड़के हर घंटे से पढ़ते रहेंगे।)
(e) She will have been swimming.
(वह तैरती हुई रहेंगी।)

इन वाक्यों में आए Verbs shall have been playing, shall have been working, will have been waiting, will have been reading और will have been swimming के Verb Form पर विचार करने से पता चलता है कि इनका Verb Form shall/will + have been + present participle है। ऐसे Verb Form को Future Perfect Continuous Tense में होना समझा जाता है।

इस Tense के वाक्यों में Subject + Verb की बनावट होती है—
Subject + shall/will + have been + V-ing.

Note: हिंदी के वाक्यों में इस Tense की क्रियाओं के अंत में ता रहूंगा/ती रहूंगी/ता रहेगा/ती रहेगी/ते रहेंगे/ते रहेंगे रहता है और क्रियाओं के पहले Period of Time/Point of Time रहता है। जब क्रियाओं के पहले Period of Time/Point of Time नहीं रहता है, तब क्रियाओं के अंत में ता हुआ रहूंगा/ती हुई रहूंगी/
The text describes the use of the future perfect continuous tense in English, providing examples and a table to summarize the verb forms in different tenses and persons.

### Table: Verb Forms in Different Tenses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Subject in Singular Number</th>
<th>Subject in Plural Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st Person</td>
<td>I shall have been eating.</td>
<td>We shall have been eating.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd Person</td>
<td>You will have been eating.</td>
<td>You will have been eating.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd Person</td>
<td>He will have been eating.</td>
<td>They will have been eating.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Since the use of Future Tense का प्रयोग Future Tense के साथ नहीं होता है। इसके बदले from या कोई अन्य उपयुक्त preposition का प्रयोग होता है।

### Future Perfect Continuous Tense का प्रयोग —

भविष्य में कुछ समय पूर्व से या किसी निर्धारित समय से या कुछ समय तक लगातार किसी कार्य-व्यापार के जारी रहने का बोध कराने के लिए इस Tense का प्रयोग होता है।

(a) By the end of this year I shall have been living here for five years.

(b) I shall have been working from morning.

(c) They will have been playing for ten days.

### SOME SPECIAL NOTES ON THE TENSE

1. अब आप सभी Tenses के Verb Forms को एक साथ इस तालिका में देखें तथा विभिन्न Tenses में इनके रुप-परिवर्तन को ध्यान में रखें।

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Future Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Simple</td>
<td>am/is/are</td>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>shall/will be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>have/has</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>shall/will have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>go/goes</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>shall/will go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Progressive</td>
<td>am/is/are going</td>
<td>was/were going</td>
<td>shall/will be going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>have/has gone</td>
<td>had gone</td>
<td>shall/will have gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect Continuous</td>
<td>have/has been going</td>
<td>had been going</td>
<td>shall/will have been going</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. Verb ‘to be’, Verb ‘to have’ और ‘to eat’ के Verb Forms —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive without to</th>
<th>Simple Present</th>
<th>Simple Past</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
<th>Present Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>am/is/are</td>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>been</td>
<td>being</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>have/has</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>having</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>eat/eats</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
<td>eating</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXERCISE 38**

*Direction: Rewrite each of the following sentences in eleven ways changing the verb form into other tenses.*

*Example:*

(a) He is eating a mango.

**Ans.** He eats a mango.

He has eaten a mango.

He has been eating a mango.

He ate a mango.

He was eating a mango.

He had eaten a mango.

1. I write a letter.

2. He has been working.

3. She was playing.

4. My father will teach me.

5. It will have been raining.

6. He and I do.

**EXERCISE 39**

*Direction: Rewrite the following sentences using the correct verb form in the light of the hints given in the brackets.*

*Examples:*

(a) I (read) a book.

**Ans.** — I am reading a book.

(b) He (sleep) then.

**Ans.** — He will be sleeping then.

(c) They (play) for two hours.

**Ans.** — They have been playing for two hours.

1. He (eat) rice.

2. I (go) to school.

3. She (play).

4. It (rain) for an hour.

5. He (write) a letter.
6. The boys (sing). [Past Progressive]
7. The children (sleep). [Past Perfect]
8. We (work) since morning. [Past Perfect Continuous]
9. I (help) you. [Simple Future]
10. You (wait) for her. [Future Progressive]
11. Ram (learn) the lesson by then. [Future Perfect]
12. The farmers (plough) the field. [Future Perfect Continuous]
13. The cat (drink) milk. [Simple Present]
14. Cats (drink) milk. [Simple Present]
17. They (sell) their car. [Simple Past]
18. He (come) soon. [Simple Future]
19. Sita (sing) since 10 o’clock. [Simple Future]
20. She (buy) a frock tomorrow. [Past Progressive]
21. They (quarrel). [Simple Past]
22. She (post) the letter. [Past Progressive]
23. I (learn) English for three years. [Past Perfect Continuous]
24. The poor man (beg). [Future Progressive]
25. The train (start) before I reached the station. [Past Perfect]
26. They (live) for ten years. [Future Perfect Continuous]
27. The patient (die) before the doctor comes. [Future Perfect]
28. They (fight) for years. [Past Perfect Continuous]
29. It (rain). [Past Progressive]
30. I (meet) him yesterday. [Simple Past]

EXERCISE 40

Direction: Same as in Exercise 39.

Examples:

(a) I (be) a good boy.  [Simple Present]
   Ans. — I am a good boy.

(b) They (be) farmers.  [Simple Present]
   Ans. — They are farmers.

(c) The girl (be) very beautiful.  [Simple Past]
   Ans. — The girl was very beautiful.

(d) My son (be) a doctor.  [Simple Future]
   Ans. — My son will be a doctor.

(e) She (have) a car.  [Simple Present]
   Ans. — She has a car.

(f) She (have) a good pen.  [Simple Past]
   Ans. — She had a good pen.
(g) I (have) money. [Simple Future]
   Ans. — I shall have money.

(h) I (be) ill. [Present Perfect]
   Ans. — I have been ill.

(i) I (be) late. [Present Progressive]
   Ans. — I am being late.

(j) I (be) twenty next month. [Simple Future]
   Ans. — I shall be twenty next month.

(k) She (see) me yesterday. [Simple Past]
   Ans. — She saw me yesterday.

1. I (be) ready. [Simple Present]
2. You (be) a poor man. [Simple Present]
3. He (be) my father. [Simple Present]
4. Milk (be) sweet. [Simple Present]
5. The boys (be) late. [Simple Past]
6. She (be) innocent. [Simple Past]
7. We (be) present there. [Simple Future]
8. She (be) a nurse. [Simple Future]
9. He (be) always ready. [Present Perfect]
10. I (be) ill for ten days. [Present Perfect]
11. Two and two (be) four. [Simple Present]
12. I (be) ready. [Present Progressive]
13. The cow (have) two eyes. [Simple Present]
14. I (have) many friends. [Simple Present]
15. She (have) a golden ring. [Simple Present]
16. I (have) a ball. [Simple Past]
17. They (have) money. [Simple Past]
18. She (have) peace. [Simple Future]
19. My son (have) a bicycle. [Simple Future]
20. We (have) some bread. [Simple Past]
21. I (see) him yesterday. [Simple Past]
22. She (go) to school everyday. [Simple Present]
23. He (be) ill since Friday. [Present Perfect]
24. He (read) a novel. [Present Progressive]
25. She (teach) us for years. [Present Perfect Continuous]
26. My father (come) tomorrow. [Simple Future]
27. The patient (die) before the doctor came. [Past Perfect]
28. Oil (float) on water. [Simple Present]
29. My father (be) seventy next month. [Simple Future]
30. He (write) a letter now. [Present Progressive]
EXERCISE 41

Direction: Use the correct verb form in the following sentences, chosen from the ones given in the brackets.

Examples:
(a) The sun .......... in the east. (is rising, rises)
(b) I .......... to school everyday. (go, am going)
(c) He .......... yesterday. (came, has come)
(d) My father .......... tomorrow. (comes, will come)
(e) It .......... for two hours. (is raining, has been raining)

Answer:
(a) The sun rises in the east.
(b) I go to school everyday.
(c) He came yesterday.
(d) My father will come tomorrow.
(e) It has been raining for two hours.

1. Cats .......... milk. [are liking, like]
2. I .......... my country. [love, am loving]
3. He .......... to school everyday. [is going, goes]
4. I .......... him last year. (meet, met)
5. We .......... this film yesterday. [saw, have seen]
6. He .......... here for ten years. [is living, has been living]
7. I always .......... by bus. (go, went)
8. She .......... a poem now. (is reading, reads)
9. He .......... home yesterday. (went, has gone)
10. The earth .......... round the sun. (moves, is moving)
11. The baby .......... because it is hungry now. (cries, is crying)
12. Mohan .......... tomorrow. (will come, comes)
13. He .......... for two hours. (is sleeping, had been sleeping)
14. She .......... to them. (was coming, were coming)
15. The patient .......... before the doctor came. (died, had died)
16. On Sundays, I .......... to temple. (am going, go)
17. He .......... all the mangoes. (has eaten, eats)
18. I .......... good books. (love, am loving)
19. He .......... me a pen yesterday. (gave, gives)
20. I .......... ill for a month. (am, have been)
21. He .......... school before the bell rang. (had reached, reached)
22. My brother .......... today from Patna. (comes, is coming)
23. He .......... a doctor. (will, will be)
24. The dog .......... at me. (barks, barked)
25. They .......... to Kashmir last year. (will go, went)
19. Changing into the Negative

Affirmative Sentence को Negative बनाने के लिए निम्नलिखित कुछ प्रमुख नियम हैं —

1. am, is, are, was, were, shall, will, do, does, did, can, could, may, might, must, should, would, ought, इत्यादि auxiliaries के बाद प्रायः not लगाकर वाक्य को Negative बनाया जाता है। जैसे —

   **Affirmative**
   I am ready.
   We are students.
   He will come.
   You should go.

   **Negative**
   I am not ready.
   We are not students.
   He will not come.
   You should not go.

2. have, has और had के बाद कहीं 'not' लगाता है तो कहीं 'no'। अतः आपको इस संबंध में विशेष ध्यान देने की जरूरत है।

   (a) जब have/has/had के तुरंत बाद Verb, Article, संख्यासूचक शब्द (one, two, many, any, etc) या परिमाणसूचक शब्द (much, any, etc) रहता है, तब have/has/had के बाद not लगाने से वाक्य Negative Sentence में परिवर्तित हो जाता है। जैसे —

      **Affirmative**
      I have eaten.
      He had gone.
      Hari has two cars.
      She has a cow.
      I had much money.

      **Negative**
      I have not eaten.
      He had not gone.
      Hari has not two cars.
      She has not a cow.
      I had not much money.

   (b) जब have/has/had के तुरंत बाद Noun या Adjective of Quality (good, red, etc) रहता है, तब have/has/had के बाद no लगाने से वाक्य Negative Sentence में परिवर्तित हो जाता है। जैसे —

      **Affirmative**
      She has ink.
      They had cows.
      I have red pens.

      **Negative**
      She has no ink.
      They had no cows.
      I have no red pens.

3. eat, laugh, go, read, इत्यादि Ordinary Verbs हैं। जब ये Present Indefinite Tense में प्रयुक्त रहते हैं, तब इनके पहले do not/does not लगाकर वाक्यों को Negative Sentences में परिवर्तित किया जाता है। और, इस परिस्थिति में अगर Ordinary Verbs में पहले से -s या -es लगा
I/We/You/They/Plural Noun + do not + V.\(^1\).
He/She/It/Singular Noun + does not + V.\(^1\).

**Affirmative**
I read.
He reads.
The cow eats.
The cows eat.
Ram plays.

**Negative**
I do not read.
He does not read.
The cow does not eat.
The cows do not eat.
Ram does not play.

**Note:** do not/does not लगाने के बाद V.\(^1\) का ही प्रयोग होता है, अर्थात् main verb में -s/es नहीं जुड़ता है।

4. जब वाक्यों में Ordinary Verbs का Past Tense यानी went, ate, laughed, इत्यादि प्रयुक्त रहता है, तब did not का प्रयोग कर वाक्यों को Negative Sentences में परिवर्तित किया जाता है। और, इस परिस्थिति में Ordinary Verbs का V.\(^2\) form V.\(^1\) form में परिवर्तित हो जाता है।

**Affirmative**
Subject + V.\(^2\)
I went.
He laughed.
They did.
The teacher taught us.

**Negative**
Subject + did not + V.\(^1\)
I did not go.
He did not laugh.
They did not do.
The teacher did not teach us.

**EXERCISE 42**

**Direction:** Change the following into negative sentences.

**Examples:**
(a) I can solve.  
Ans. — I cannot solve.
(b) I have gold.  
Ans. — I have no gold.
(c) He has come.  
Ans. — He has not come.
(d) The boy weeps.  
Ans. — The boy does not weep.
(e) They laughed.  
Ans. — They did not laugh.

1. I am a farmer.  
7. It should be done.
2. You are honest.  
8. You must go there.
3. They were absent.  
9. He would come.
4. She will come soon.  
10. Ram is a poor farmer.
5. We shall win the match.  
11. He is coming today.
6. You can defeat him.  
12. She was dancing there.
13. He was beaten. 27. They have water.
14. She must be a queen. 28. I have good horses.
15. I shall be a doctor. 29. I have a good horse.
16. I have eaten. 30. I have three good horses.
17. He has been ill. 31. The boy has honesty.
18. They had reached. 32. We have freedom.
19. She has a car. 33. I have love for him.
20. My son had an ink-pot. 34. She has golden watches.
21. The boy has six books. 35. They have good wine.
22. The beggar had rice. 36. She will have peace.
23. I have much gold. 37. My father had a red car.
24. They had two horses. 38. My father had red cars.
25. She has cows. 39. She had blue eyes.
26. He had fever. 40. She has black ink.

EXERCISE 43

Direction: Change the following into negative sentences.

Examples:
(a) I know him. Ans. — I do not know him.
(b) She knows him. Ans. — She does not know him.
(c) Ram went there. Ans. — Ram did not go there.
(d) They laughed at me. Ans. — They did not laugh at me.

1. I love her. 16. His brothers love him.
2. We love India. 17. The players came in time.
3. You know him. 18. She can sing a song.
4. She cares for you. 19. I have toys.
5. He reads at night. 20. The poor man had a cat.
6. Ram knows English. 21. They have been absent.
7. They play football. 22. She had been playing.
8. The boys go to school. 23. They will be playing.
9. He came yesterday. 24. I shall have played.
10. I did the work. 25. He is trying to do.
11. She loved me. 26. I am to read.
12. They ploughed the field. 27. He has to work.
13. He helped the beggar. 28. It will be done.
14. The teacher taught us. 29. She is being taught.
15. My mother gave me sweets. 30. I was taught.
20. Changing into the Interrogative

Assertive Sentences को Interrogative Sentences में बदलने के लिए निम्नलिखित प्रमुख नियम हैं —

1. वाक्य में प्रयुक्त Auxiliary Verb को Subject के पहले रखने से वाक्य Interrogative Sentence में परिवर्तित हो जाता है। जैसे —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assertive</th>
<th>Interrogative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He is ill.</td>
<td>Is he ill?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have eaten.</td>
<td>Have I eaten?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She will dance today.</td>
<td>Will she dance today?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She should sing.</td>
<td>Should she sing?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She does not dance.</td>
<td>Does she not dance?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They did not come.</td>
<td>Did they not come?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was not ready.</td>
<td>Was I not ready?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. जब किसी वाक्य में Ordinary Verb Simple Present Tense में प्रयुक्त रहता है, तब Subject के पहले do/does का प्रयोग करके वाक्य को Interrogative Sentence में परिवर्तित किया जाता है। और, इस परिस्थिति में अगर Ordinary Verb में पहले से -s या -es लगा रहता है तो वह -s या -es लुप्त हो जाता है। अर्थात्, Interrogative Sentence का structure इस प्रकार हो जाता है —

   Do + I / we / you / they / plural noun + V1?

   Does + he / she / it / singular noun + V1?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assertive</th>
<th>Interrogative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I play.</td>
<td>Do I play?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They know me.</td>
<td>Do they know me?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ram laughs.</td>
<td>Does Ram laugh?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He eats.</td>
<td>Does he eat?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He loves me.</td>
<td>Does he love me?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. जब किसी वाक्य में Ordinary Verb Simple Past Tense में प्रयुक्त रहता है, तब अभीष्ट वाक्य को Interrogative Sentence में परिवर्तित करने के लिए Subject के पहले did का प्रयोग किया जाता है और Subject के बाद प्रयुक्त Verb के V2 form को V1 form में परिवर्तित किया जाता है। इस परिस्थिति में Interrogative Sentence का Structure होता है —

   Did + Subject + V1?
Assertive | Interrogative
---|---
Subject + V² | Did + Subject + V¹?
I went. | Did I go?
They won the match. | Did they win the match?
He killed a bird. | Did he kill a bird?
He did. | Did he do?

**EXERCISE 44**

*Direction: Change the following into interrogative sentences—*

*Examples:*

(a) She is working.  | Ans. — Is she working?
(b) You have no money.  | Ans. — Have you no money?
(c) You know English.  | Ans. — Do you know English?
(d) Sita dances well.  | Ans. — Does Sita dance well?
(e) We saw the Tajmahal.  | Ans. — Did we see the Tajmahal?

[A]

1. She is a good girl.
2. We can lift it.
3. They have arrived.
4. It has been raining.
5. They are doing nothing.
6. The robbers were cruel.
7. He was coming to me.
8. They had no friends.
9. The train had reached earlier.
10. Mohan had not been sleeping.
11. She will be our guide.
12. Sita will be dancing there.
13. We shall have danced.
14. I shall have been playing.
15. The child can walk fast.
16. I did not listen to him.
17. She does not know English.
18. Everyone should love his country.
19. There are twenty boys here.
20. It is not half past ten.
21. I must be here by ten o’clock.
22. My friend had no idea of it.
23. The poor girl has no money.
24. It will not rain today.

   [ B ]

1. The cow eats grass.
2. Cows eat grass.
3. He wants to be a doctor.
4. I love everybody.
5. We often go to pictures.
6. You tell a lie.
7. She never cooks food.
8. Children love toys.
10. Mukul wants to be a doctor.
11. Your brother needs your help.
12. These books helped me a lot.
13. I went there.
15. They played the match.
16. He wanted to be an engineer.
17. I never did that.
18. He cried out for help.
19. She lived in that house.
20. Her dress looks beautiful.
21. I wanted to see him.
22. She passed the examination.
23. These students get up early in the morning.
24. Mohan and Sohan saved the life of the poor girl.

**USE OF QUESTION WORDS**

इस Chapter में अभी तक जिन्हें बी Interrogative Sentences की चर्चा हुई है, वे सभी किसी-न-किसी auxiliary से शुरू होते हैं। ऐसे Interrogative Sentences जो Auxiliaries से शुरू होते हैं, उनकी खास विशेषता यह है कि उनमें निहित प्रश्न का जवाब yes या no में दिया जा सकता है। अतः, इन्हें yes-no questions कहते हैं। अब हम ऐसे Interrogative Sentences पर विचार करें जो Question words से शुरू होते हैं।

what, when, where, which, whose, whom, who, why, how, etc Question Words हैं।
1. यदि कोई Question Word या Question Word + Noun ही किसी वाक्य का Subject हो, तो अभीष्ट Interrogative sentence का structure होगा—

Question Word + Verb + अन्य वर्तमान चरण?
Who will come?
Who will beat you?
Who knows you?
Who has seen the wind?
Who can answer the question?
Whose pen is red?
Whose cow is grazing there?
Which man will help me?
What is wrong?

2. यदि किसी वाक्य में Question Word या Question word + Noun वाक्य के Subject के रूप में प्रयुक्त नहीं हो, तो अभीष्ट Interrogative Sentence का structure होगा—

Question Word (+ Noun) + Yes-No Question
Why is he ready?
Why is he weeping?
Where do you live?
When does she sleep?
What has he done?
Whom did you beat?
When will he come?
Which man did you beat?
How am I wrong?
Which class do you read in?

EXERCISE 45

Direction: Using the question word given in the bracket frame questions to which the following may be suitable answers—

Examples:

(a) Ram reads in class VII. (What)
Ans.— What class does Ram read in?
(b) My mother came yesterday. (When)
   Ans. — When did your mother come?
(c) He will buy four horses. (How many)
   Ans. — How many horses will he buy?
(d) Ram killed Ravan. (Who)
   Ans. — Who killed Ravan?
(e) The girl is six years old. (How old)
   Ans. — How old is the girl?
(f) He came here for books. (Why)
   Ans. — Why did he come here?
(g) I have four cows. (How many)
   Ans. — How many cows have you?
(h) This is Mohan’s dog. (Whose)
   Ans. — Whose dog is this?

1. My name is Mukul. (What)
2. My father is a doctor. (What)
3. I live at Gaya. (Where)
4. The cow eats grass. (What)
5. He gets up at 5 o’clock in the morning. (When)
6. He is weeping for milk. (What)
7. The boys are playing cricket. (What)
8. They are going to school. (Where)
9. My father has gone to the office. (Where)
10. He killed a bird. (What)
11. She came a month ago. (When)
12. The children made noises for sweets. (Why)
13. He went to Agra. (Where)
14. They bought four horses. (How many)
15. He was playing in the room. (Where)
16. She will come tomorrow. (When)
17. He will be a doctor. (What)
18. I shall go to America. (Where)
19. She dances very beautifully. (How)
20. She taught my son. (Who)
21. I beat the wicked boy. (Whom)
22. The train starts at 10 o’clock. (When)
23. Birds love to fly here and there. (What)
24. The hunter shot the lion. (Who)
25. The match will start now. (When)

**EXERCISE 46**

*Direction: Same as in Exercise 45.*

1. Raju and Vinay are my friends. (Who)
2. They are students. (What)
3. It is Monday today. (What day)
4. She has four sons. (How many sons)
5. There are 400 students in this school. (How many)
6. This is Mohan’s dog. (Whose dog)
7. The wall is ten feet high. (How high)
8. I am ten minutes late. (How late)
9. He eats five mangoes everyday. (How many mangoes)
10. My son is ten years old. (How old)
11. He wants this book. (Which book)
12. John broke Mohan’s window. (Whose window)
13. My mother gave me sweets. (Who)
14. My mother gave me sweets. (What)
15. The cat has two eyes. (How many eyes)
16. He had nothing in his pocket. (What)
17. This will help you. (What)
18. My watch was lost. (What)
19. My son stood first. (Whose son)
20. Ram loves his mother very much. (Who)
21. Ram loves his mother very much. (How much)
22. He saw a thief last night. (What)
23. He saw a thief last night. (When)
24. Hari does not like cats. (Who)
25. Hari does not like cats. (What)
21. Subject-Verb Agreement

Subject और Verb के बीच तालमेल (agreement) आवश्यक है। अर्थात् Verb का वही Number और Person होता है जो उसके Subject का होता है। इसलिए किसी बाक्य में Verb का प्रयोग करने के पहले यह जानना आवश्यक हो जाता है कि उसके Subject का Number और Person क्या है। इसके लिए यहाँ कुछ नियम बताए जा रहे हैं, जिन्हें आप ध्यान से समझें।

1. जब Noun के अंत में -s/es लगता है तब वह Plural हो जाता है, परंतु जब Verb के अंत में -s/es लगता है तब वह Singular हो जाता है। अर्थात्,

Noun + s/es = Plural
Verb + s/es = Singular

इस तालिका की समझ—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cow</td>
<td>cows</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>goes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boy</td>
<td>boys</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>does</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bench</td>
<td>benches</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>eats</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

इस प्रकार यह स्पष्ट है कि Verb का मूल रूप हमेशा Plural Number में रहता है; जब उसमें -s/es जुड़ता है तब वह Singular हो जाता है!

2. Singular Subject के साथ Singular Verb का प्रयोग होता है और Plural Subject के साथ Plural Verb का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

The boy reads.        The boys read.
The cow gives milk.    Cows give milk.
This pen is red.       These pens are red.
My brother is a doctor. My brothers are doctors.
He was going.          They were going.
She was ready.         They were ready.

Note 1. I Singular है, परंतु इसके साथ Plural Verb (have, eat, laugh, run, etc) का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

I have a dog.          I have been sleeping.
I have eaten.          I love my friends.
Note 2. You का प्रयोग Singular Noun के करने में भी होता है और Plural Noun के करने में भी. एवं वे हों से प्रतिविधियों में इसके साथ Plural Verb का भी प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —

You are a student. You were my friend.
You are students. You were my friends.

3. यदि वाक्य में Subject के रूप में या वाक्य के Subject में each, every, either, neither, one, everyone, anyone, no one, someone, somebody, nobody, much, a little, little, इत्यादि प्रयुक्त रहें, तो Verb Singular Number में प्रयुक्त होगा। जैसे —

Each boy has a pen. No one is ready to go.
Each of them is guilty. Nobody was there.
Everyone was present. Much has been said on this.
Either way is safe. Every boy and girl was awarded.

4. both, many, several, few, a few, these, those, two, three, four, etc से Plural Number का नोंद होता है। अतः वाक्य के Subject के रूप में या वाक्य के Subject में यदि वे प्रयुक्त रहें, तो Verb Plural Number में प्रयुक्त होगा। जैसे —

Both of them are guilty. A few persons are honest.
Many boys are there. Those are your books.
Several apples were rotten. Three cows are grazing there.

5. यदि किसी वाक्य का Subject as well as, along with, together with, with, and not, like, unlike, including, excluding, but, except या besides के द्वारा joint रहें, तो वाक्य का Verb इन शब्दों के पहले प्रयुक्त होने वाले पद के अनुसार Singular या Plural होगा। जैसे —

He as well as his children is honest.
I as well as they are ready to go there.
All the players, with the captain, are present in the ground.
He, and not I, has done it.
He along with his friends is coming today.

6. यदि वाक्य के Subject में प्रयुक्त दो या दो से अधिक Nouns/ Pronouns को or, nor, either ... or या neither ... nor से अलग किया जाए, तो Verb अपने से सबसे नजदीक आनेवाले Noun/Pronoun के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होगा। जैसे —

Either you or he is guilty.
Neither he nor I am guilty.
Are you or he to blame?
You or he is to blame.
Either Ram or his friends are guilty.
7. कुछ वाक्यों में Subject की बनावट इस प्रकार रहती है —
Noun + Preposition + Noun + ……
the cow of Ram                      the boys of this school
the cows of Ram                    the water of these rivers

ऐसे वाक्यों में Verb का प्रयोग प्रथम Noun के अनुसार होता है। जैसे —
The cow of Ram is ill.
The cows of Ram are ill.
The water of these rivers is dirty.

8. यदि वाक्य का Subject कोई ऐसा Noun हो जिससे निश्चित दूरी, समय, मात्रा, रकम या वजन का बोध होता हो, तो Plural रहने पर भी ऐसे Subjects के साथ Singular Verbs का प्रयोग होता है, क्योंकि उनसे संख्या का बोध न होकर निश्चित मात्रा, माप या परिमाण का बोध होता है। जैसे —
Forty miles is a long distance to walk.
Ten rupees was given to me.
Ten hours is enough for the work.
Five tons of coal is needed for the work.

9. जब दो अंक and से संयुक्त रहते हैं, तब उनके लिए प्रयुक्त Verb प्रायः Singular Number में ही रहता है। जैसे —
Two and two is four.

10. यदि वाक्य का Subject ‘The + Adjective’ हो, तो Verb Plural होगा। जैसे —
The poor are honest.
The rich are happy.
The old are helpless.
The blind have their own way.

11. कुछ ऐसे Singular Nouns हैं जो and से जुड़े रहते हैं और प्रयोग में बराबर एक साथ आते हैं, मानों एक Noun दूसरे का जोड़ा हो। ऐसे वाक्यों का Verb सदा Singular रहता है क्योंकि उनसे एक ही वस्तु, भाव-विशेष का बोध होता है, अलग-अलग दो वस्तुओं का नहीं। जैसे —
Rice and curry is my favourite dish.
Bread and butter is a rich food.
Slow and steady wins the race.

अपवाद : ऐसे वाक्य में Verb Plural Number में प्रयुक्त हुआ है —
Time and tide wait for none.

12. There से आरंभ होनेवाले वाक्यों के Verbs उनके असली Subjects के अनुसार प्रयुक्त होते हैं, जो वाक्यों में there के बाद प्रयुक्त रहते हैं। जैसे —
There is a boy.
There are boys.
There is no book in the box.
There are no books in the box.

13. कुछ ऐसे विषय, बीमारी, खेल, किताब, देश और शहर के नाम हैं जिनके अंत में s लगा रहता है, फिर भी इनके साथ Singular Verbs का ही प्रयोग होता है। ये हैं—

बीमारियों के नाम—measles, mumps, etc.
खेलों के नाम—billiards, darts, etc.
विषयों के नाम—mathematics, physics, phonetics, statistics, linguistics, etc.

देश और शहर के नाम—Wales, Athens, The United States, etc.
Measles is a dangerous disease.
Mathematics is not an easy subject.
The United States is a great country.
Lamb's Tales from Shakespeare is an interesting book.

**EXERCISE 47**

*Direction: Fill in the blanks with suitable verbs choosing from the brackets—*

*Examples:*

(a) You, he and I …….. friends. (am, are) Ans. — are
(b) Each of the boys …….. come. (have, has) Ans. — has
(c) Every book …….. on the table. (is, are) Ans. — is
(d) Several boys …….. bicycles. (has, have) Ans. — have
(e) Either of you …….. wrong. (is, have) Ans. — is
(f) Many students …….. absent. (is, are) Ans. — are
(g) I along with my friends …….. going. (was, were) Ans. — was
(h) Either he or I …….. mistaken. (is, am) Ans. — am
(i) Each boy and girl …….. come. (has, have) Ans. — has
(j) Neither the boys nor the teacher …….. present. (was, were) Ans. — was

1. You and he …….. present. (was, were)
2. The students …….. slept. (has, have)
3. Those houses …….. new. (were, was)
4. Every child …….. a toy. (has, have)
5. Every man and woman …….. equal right. (has, have)
6. Each of them …….. rewarded. (was, were)
7. Either boy …….. guilty. (is, are)
8. Either of the girls ........ present.
10. Neither of them .......... innocent.
11. Everyone ........ pleased there.
12. No one ........ absent in the class.
13. Someone ........ stolen my pen.
14. Only a little water ........ there.
15. Several boys ........ playing.
16. Many mangoes ........ not sweet.
17. A few books ........ useful.
18. Few persons ........ there.
19. I as well as my father ........ this.
20. She as well as I ........ going there.
21. He along with his friends ........ arrived.
22. Neither you nor he ........ guilty.
23. Either Ram or his friends ........ done this.
24. She or her sisters ........ done it.
25. Either she or I ........ to win.

EXERCISE 48

Direction: Fill in the blanks with suitable verbs choosing from the brackets—

Examples:

(a) The cow of Ram ........ black. (is, are) Ans. — is
(b) The cows of Ram ........ black. (is, are) Ans. — are
(c) Fifty miles .......... a long distance. (is, are) Ans. — is
(d) Five rupees .......... a small amount. (is, are) Ans. — is
(e) Ten plus ten .......... twenty. (is, are) Ans. — is
(f) The poor .......... honest. (is, are) Ans. — are
(g) There .......... seven boys there. (is, are) Ans. — are
(h) Physics .......... an interesting subject. (is, are) Ans. — is
(i) Rice and curry .......... a good meal. (is, are) Ans. — is
(j) The United States ... a great country. (is, are) Ans. — is

1. The water of these rivers ........ dirty. (is, are)
2. The eyes of the elephant .......... small. (is, are)
3. The books on the table .......... mine. (is, are)
4. The colour of these flowers .......... bright. (is, are)
5. Ten kilos of sugar .......... needed. (is, are)
6. Sixty miles .......... a long distance. (is, are)
7. Five hundred rupees ........ paid to me. (was, were)
8. Five and five ........ ten. (is, are)
9. Ten times five .......... fifty. (is, are)
10. Ten hours .......... not enough for this. (is, are)
11. The blind .......... helpless. (is, are)
12. The rich .......... proud. (is, are)
13. There .......... a pen in his pocket. (is, are)
14. There .......... two pens in his pocket. (is, are)
15. There .......... a boy and a girl there. (was, were)
16. Bread and butter .......... a rich food. (is, are)
17. Mathematics .......... an interesting subject. (is, are)
18. The teeth of the boy .......... white. (is, are)
19. She, and not I, .......... wrong. (is, am)
20. The people of this village .......... happy. (is, are)
21. Each of the boys .......... intelligent. (is, are)
22. You as well as he .......... guilty. (is, are)
23. Either he or I .......... mistaken. (is, am)
24. Neither of them .......... present. (was, were)
25. You and I .......... neighbours. (am, are)
22. Infinitive, Gerund and Participle

1. Infinitive: Infinitive क्रिया का धातु रूप है, जिसपर वाक्य के Subject के Number और Person का कोई प्रमाण नहीं पड़ता। सामान्यतया Infinitive के शुरू में particle ‘to’ लगा रहता है, जैसे — to go, to run, to laugh, etc और वाक्य में इसका अपना कोई Subject नहीं होता।

इन वाक्यों पर विचार करें —

I want to go.
The boy wants to go.
The boys want to go.

इन वाक्यों में ‘to go” एक Infinitive हैं। वाक्यों के Subjects (I, The boy और The boys) का इसपर कोई प्रमाण नहीं है। Subjects के Number और Person बदलने पर भी प्रयुक्त Infinitive के रूप में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं हुआ है। पुनः, यहाँ एक बात और ध्यान देने योग्य है कि ऊपर के वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त Infinitive ‘to go’ का अपना कोई Subject नहीं है। I, The boy और The boys क्रमशः want, wants और want के Subjects हैं, to go के नहीं। ‘to go’ यहाँ एक object के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुआ है।

Note: Infinitive का प्रयोग Object के अलावा Subject और Complement के रूप में भी होता है।

2. Bare Infinitive: Infinitive में particle ‘to’ लगा रहता है। परंतु कुछ Verbs ऐसे हैं जिनके बाद Infinitive without to का प्रयोग होता है। ऐसे Infinitives ‘without to’ को Bare Infinitives कहते हैं। इन वाक्यों को देखें —

I made him laugh.
He heard them cry.
We watched him play.
I let her go home.

यहाँ ऊपर दिए गए वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त laugh, cry, play और go ऐसे Infinitives हैं, जिनके पहले to प्रयुक्त नहीं है। अतः इन्हें यहाँ प्रयोग के हिसाब से Bare Infinitives कहेंगे।

3. आगे ऊपर दिए गए वाक्यों में Full Infinitives (to walk, to play, to run, to dance, etc) और Bare Infinitives (weep, cry, dance, etc) के प्रयोग को देखें —
To walk is an exercise.  
Children like to play.  
It is yet to decide.  
She is about to dance.  
We eat to live.  
It is easy to solve.  
I have no house to live in.  

She made him weep.  
I heard him cry.  
I can go.  
We shall dance.  
He does nothing but play.  
Let him do this.  
She bade me go.

GERUND

1. जब Verb + ing का प्रयोग Noun की तरह होता है, तब उसे Gerund कहा जाता है। इन वाक्यों में मोटे अफ़रों में छपे शब्द Gerunds हैं —

Walking is an exercise.  
I like reading stories.  
He is fond of playing cricket.  
Saying is easy but doing is difficult.  
My hobby is dancing.

Note 1. Gerund एक Noun की तरह किसी वाक्य में Subject, Object या Complement के रूप में प्रयुक्त होता है, जबांत किसी वाक्य में Gerund वहीं प्रयुक्त होता है, जहाँ एक Noun प्रयुक्त होना चाहिए। इसे समझने के लिए Noun और Gerund के तुलनात्मक प्रयोग पर विचार करें —

(a) Tea is bad for health.  
    Smoking is bad for health.  
(b) I love toys.  
    I love dancing.  
(c) Friendship is a boon.  
    Seeing is believing.  
(d) I am fond of sweets.  
    I am fond of travelling.

Note 2. जब Verb + ing का प्रयोग Verb की तरह हो, तब उसे हम Gerund नहीं कहेंगे। जैसे, इन वाक्यों में V + ing Gerund नहीं है —

I am dancing.  
She is smoking.

PARTICIPLE

Participle के मुख्यतः दो भेद हैं —

(a) Present Participle [Verb + ing], जैसे —  
    playing, eating, dancing, laughing, etc.

(b) Past Participle [Verb + d/ed या अन्य उपयुक्त रूप], जैसे —  
    played, eaten, gone, burnt, given, etc.
Uses of the Participle:

1. Present Participle की मदद से Progressive Tense तथा Past Participle की मदद से Perfect Tense और Passive Voice बनाए जाते हैं। जैसे —

I am playing. She has gone.
They were working. He had reached.
He was beaten. The chair was broken.

2. Present Participle तथा Past Participle का प्रयोग सामान्य Adjective की तरह भी होता है और इस स्थिति में ये अपने बाद आने वाले Noun को modify करते हैं, जैसे —

The child has a smiling face. This is a boiled egg.
We have no drinking water. He is a retired teacher.

उपर्युक्त वाक्यों में smiling, drinking, boiled और retired Participles हैं तथा ये Adjective की तरह प्रयुक्त हुए हैं। ये Adjective की तरह प्रयुक्त हुए हैं, इस तथ्य की पुष्टि के लिए हम इन वाक्यों को पुनः लिख रहे हैं जिनमें smiling, boiled, drinking और retired के स्थान पर क्रमशः beautiful, good, pure और noble Adjectives प्रयुक्त हुए हैं।

The child has a beautiful face. This is a good egg.
We have no pure water. He is a noble teacher.

Note: ऊपर दिए गए तत्त्वों से स्पष्ट है कि Participle Verb का वह रूप है जो Progressive या Perfect Tense बनाने में मदद करता है तथा विभिन्न वाक्यों में Adjective के रूप में भी प्रयुक्त होता है।

Confusion से कोई —

Gerund और Present Participle दोनों का एक ही रूप है — Verb + ing. इसलिए कभी-कभी विवाहितों भ्रम में पड़ जाते हैं कि वाक्य में प्रयुक्त Verb + ing का प्रयोग Gerund के रूप में हुआ है या Present Participle के रूप में। ऐसी स्थिति में आप इनके प्रयोग को देखें। अगर Verb + ing का प्रयोग एक Noun के रूप में हुआ है तब इसे Gerund कहेंगे। अगर Verb + ing का प्रयोग Continuous Tense बनाने में या एक Adjective के रूप में हुआ है तब इसे Participle कहेंगे। जैसे —

My hobby is dancing. (dancing = Noun = Gerund)
I am dancing. (dancing = Verb = Participle)
He is my dancing partner. (dancing = Adjective = Participle)
I don’t like drinking. (drinking = Noun = Gerund)
He is drinking. (drinking = Verb = Participle)
There is no drinking water. (drinking = Adjective = Participle)
Infinitive, Gerund and Participle

Exercise 49

Direction: Pick out the infinitives in the following sentences.

Examples:
(a) I want to go.
(b) To sleep is necessary.
(c) I am too tired to run.
(d) She made me laugh.
(e) I shall help her.

Ans.
to go
to sleep
to run
laugh
help

1. She wants to help me.
2. It is about to rain.
3. To walk is an exercise.
4. I had to work.
5. Are you to go now?
6. To steal is very bad.
7. He wishes to succeed.
8. I have no house to live in.
9. It is easy to solve.
10. Children like to play.
11. He came to help me.
12. She made me laugh.
13. I heard him cry.
14. I can do.
15. Give me a book to read.
16. To see is to believe.
17. They let her go.
18. I saw him sleep.
19. He does nothing but play.
20. Teach me to dance.

EXERCISE 50

Direction: Pick out the gerunds in the following sentences.

Examples:
(a) I like playing cricket.
(b) Drinking is a bad thing.
(c) Stop crying.
(d) I am fond of hunting.
(e) My hobby is dancing.
(f) He enjoys flying kites.
(g) He went on laughing.

Ans.
playing
drinking
crying
hunting
dancing
flying
laughing
1. Swimming is an exercise.
2. Smoking is a bad habit.
3. Children love playing.
4. I like reading stories.
5. I am tired of doing this job.
6. She will learn dancing.
7. I am fond of playing cricket.
8. It stopped raining.
9. Reading makes a man perfect.
10. I think of going there.
11. He stopped talking.
12. Old men love walking.
13. I love eating mangoes.
15. Please go on writing.
16. Seeing is believing.
17. Thank you for helping me.
18. Try to avoid quarrelling.
19. Eating much is bad.
20. It is no use waiting here.

EXERCISE 51

Direction: Pick out the participles in the following sentences.

Examples:

(a) I am reading a book.
   Ans. reading

(b) He has lost his pen.
   Ans. lost

(c) He was beaten.
   Ans. beaten

(d) Don’t jump off the running train.
   Ans. running

(e) The police found the stolen articles.
   Ans. stolen

1. He was playing.
2. She is eating.
3. He has returned.
4. The work was done.
5. They were awarded.
6. This is a boiled egg.
7. This is the broken chair.
8. It is a burning issue.
9. He was satisfied.
10. He is an amusing man.
11. He played a loosing game.
12. He was a drunken person.
13. There were many burnt houses.
14. This is an interesting story.
15. He is a tired man.
16. Here is a broken window.
17. He had a loaded pistol.
18. He is a retired officer.
19. Don’t disturb the sleeping child.
20. It is an admitted fact.

EXERCISE 52

Direction: Pick out the infinitives, gerunds and participles in the following examples—

Examples:
(a) I want to go there.
(b) To smoke is a bad habit.
(c) Walking is an exercise.
(d) I like playing cricket.
(e) Look at the running dog.
(f) I saw a dying man.
(g) He was taught English.

Ans.
to go — infinitive
to smoke — infinitive
walking — gerund
playing — gerund
running — participle
dying — participle
taught — participle

1. I wanted to help you.
2. I heard her weep.
3. He made me laugh.
4. To tell lies is not good.
5. I enjoy flying kites.
6. I dislike drinking.
7. He went on talking.
8. Running water is clear.
9. These are solved examples.
10. Gardening is a hobby.
11. Sleeping is necessary to life.
12. It is easy to write a letter.
14. I found my lost pen.
15. He is a good looking man.
16. He was not satisfied.
17. I hope to succeed.
18. She is fond of dancing.
19. She was my dancing partner.
20. She was dancing.
Rice sells at Rs. 10 a kilo. ~ चावल दस रुपये किलो की दर से विकता है।
Sita is at school. ~ सीता स्कूल में है।
Mohan is good at football. ~ मोहन फुटबॉल में अच्छा है।
They are at work. ~ वे लोग काम पर हैं।

7. **Before:** से पहले, के पहले, के सामने

A comes before B. ~ A, B के पहले आता है।
I will come before Holi. ~ मैं होली से पहले आऊँगा।
June comes before July. ~ जून जुलाई के पहले आता है।
He stood before the judge. ~ वह जज के सामने खड़ा था।

8. **Behind:** के पीछे

He hid behind the tree. ~ वह पेड़ के पीछे हिला गया।

9. **Below:** के नीचे

Please don’t write below this line. ~ कृपया इस पंक्ति के नीचे नहीं लिखें।
They were below twenty. ~ वे लोग बीस के नीचे थे।

10. **Beside and Besides:** Beside का अर्थ है — बगल में, समीप या बाहर और इससे स्थान का बोध होता है। Besides का अर्थ है — अतिरिक्त (in addition to), अलावा।

She was sitting beside her mother. ~ वह अपनी मां की बगल में बैठी हुई थी।

She had no one besides her mother. ~ माँ के अलावा उसका कोई नहीं था।

11. **But:** except, को छोड़कर, के अतिरिक्त

All but one were drowned. ~ एक को छोड़कर सभी डूब गए।

12. **By:** से / द्वारा, के पास, तक / में (साधन, समीपता, समय इत्यादि का बोध)

This book has been written by me. ~ यह पुस्तक मेरे द्वारा लिखी गई है।
May I pay by cheque? ~ क्या मैं चेक से भुगतान कर सकता हूँ? (कहाँ)
He came by bus. ~ वह बस से आया।
Come and sit by me. ~ आओ और मेरे पास बैठो।
The house is by the big tree. ~ घर बड़े पेड़ के पास है।
Finish it by 4 o'clock. ~ चार बजे तक इसे पूरा करो।
It is 10 o'clock by my watch. ~ मेरी घड़ी में दस बजता है।

13. **For:** के लिए, की ओर, से (period of time), में / के बदले

This is for you. ~ यह तुम्हारे लिए है।
He came here for money. ~ वह पैसे के लिए आया है।
Is this train for Delhi? ~ क्या यह दिल्ली के लिए है?
It has been raining for two hours. ~ दो घंटों से वर्षा हो रही है।
I bought the pen for Rs. 5. ~ मैंने पैंच रुपये में कलम खरीदी।

14. From: से (स्थान से अलग होने का भाव, समय का भाव, स्रोत का भाव, इत्यादि)
He has come from Patna. ~ वह पटना से आया है।
He was blind from birth. ~ वह जन्म से अंधा था।
These lines are from the Bible. ~ ये पंक्तियाँ बाइबल से ली गई हैं।
We make curd from milk. ~ हमलोग दूध से रक्षा बनाते हैं।

15. In: में [बड़े स्थान, समय, स्थिरता (के भीतर), पोशाक, पेशा, इत्यादि का भाव दर्शाने में]
He lives in India. ~ वह भारत में रहता है।
I play in the morning. ~ मैं सुबह में खेलता हूँ।
She is in the room. ~ वह कमरे में है।
She was in sari. ~ वह साड़ी में थी।
He is in the army. ~ वह सेना में है।
What is in your mind? ~ तुम्हारे दिमाग में क्या है?

16. Into: में (बाहर से भीतर की ओर जाने का भाव, एक वस्तु से दूसरी वस्तु में बदलने का भाव, इत्यादि)
He came into my room. ~ वह मेरे कमरे में आया।
Heat turns water into vapour. ~ गर्मी पानी को वाष्प में परिवर्तित करती है।

17. Of: का/की/के (संबंध/अधिकार, माप/तील, मानसिक, अंश, कारण, इत्यादि का बोध)
Ram was the son of Dashratha. ~ राम दशरथ के पुत्र थे।
He bought a kilo of sugar. ~ उसने एक किलो चीनी खरीदी।
This is made of wood. ~ वह लकड़ी का है।
He is a member of the team. ~ वह दल का सदस्य है।
He died of cholera. ~ वह हैजा के कारण मरा।
I know nothing of him. ~ मैं उसके बारे में कुछ नहीं जानता हूँ।

18. On: पर (वस्तु या व्यक्ति से सटा हुआ — स्थान का भाव), को (समय का भाव)
Put the book on the table. ~ किताब को टेबल पर रखो।
They are sitting on the grass. ~ वे लोग घास पर बैठे हैं।
He came on Monday. ~ वह सोमबार की आया।
They went on 10th April. ~ वे 10 अप्रैल को गए।

19. **Over:** के ऊपर (सटा या छूटा हुआ नहीं), से ऊपर/अधिक

There was an umbrella over his head. ~ उसके सिर के ऊपर एक छाता था।
He is over sixty. ~ वे साठ से ऊपर के हैं।
There is a bridge over the river. ~ नदी के ऊपर एक पुल है।

20. **Since:** से (point of time के पहले)

He has been absent since Monday. ~ वह सोमबार से अनुपस्थित है।

21. **To:** की ओर, बाकी (समय का भाव), इत्यादि

I am going to school. ~ मैं स्कूल जा रहा हूँ।
It is ten to five. ~ पाँच बजने में दस मिनट बाकी है।

22. **Under:** के नीचे, से कम

The cat was under the table. ~ बिल्ली टेबल के नीचे थी।
She is under eighteen. ~ वह 18 से कम की है।

23. **With:** के साथ, से, द्वारा

He plays with his friend. ~ वह अपने दोस्त के साथ खेलता है।
I write with a pen. ~ मैं कलम से लिखता हूँ।
He cut the apple with a knife. ~ उसने सेब को चाँदी से काटा।
I am always with you. ~ मैं हमेशा तुझे साथ हूँ।
He was with a bag. ~ वह बैग के साथ था।

24. **Within:** के अंदर

He will come within an hour. ~ वह एक घंटे के अंदर आएगा।

25. **Without:** के बिना

The pen is without a nib. ~ कलम बिना नाप की है।
We can’t live without food. ~ हमलोग भोजन के बिना नहीं रह सकते।

**SOME SPECIAL HINTS**

1. **At & In:** जहाँ At का संबंध small extent of space/time से है वहाँ In का संबंध wider extent of space/time से है। जैसे —

He lives at Salempur.
He lives in Patna/Bihar/India.
I will start at seven o’clock in the morning.
2. **In & Into:** जहाँ In किसी चीज के भीतर स्थिरता या विश्राम को सूचित करता है, वहाँ Into बाहर से भीतर आने की गति को सूचित करता है।

   The frog is in the well. (विश्राम)
   The frog fell into the well. (गति)

3. **With & By:** किसी कार्य को संपादित करने के लिए जहाँ कोई प्रयुक्त उपकरण (tools) या भौतिक वस्तुओं (material instruments) के पहले With का प्रयोग किया जाता है, वहाँ agent or doer (जो प्रायः मनुष्य या भाववाचक संज्ञा रहता है) के पहले By का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

   He was beaten with a stick.
   He was beaten by his teacher.
   The letter was written by him with a pen.

4. **Since & From:** Future Tense में Point of Time के पहले Since का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, इसके बदले From का प्रयोग होता है।

   I shall have been doing this from January.
   I shall be absent from Monday.

5. (a) जब Intransitive Verb के बाद कोई Noun/Pronoun आता है, तब Verb और Noun/Pronoun के बीच में एक Preposition अवश्य आता है।

   He is going to Patna.

   (b) जब Transitive Verb के बाद कोई Noun/Pronoun आता है, तब Verb और Noun/Pronoun के बीच में Preposition नहीं आता है।

   She loves me.
   I know him very well.
   She is drinking milk.
   The poet describes Nature.
   We should obey our elders.

**WORDS FOLLOWED BY APPROPRIATE PREPOSITIONS**

Prepositions का प्रयोग करने में सावधानी बरतने की आवश्यकता होती है, क्योंकि अंग्रेजी में अनेक ऐसे शब्द हैं, जिनके साथ किसी खास Preposition का प्रयोग होता है। कुछ शब्दों के साथ भिन्न अर्थों में भिन्न-भिन्न Prepositions का प्रयोग किया जाता है। अतः किसी शब्द के साथ Preposition लगाने से पहले वह ध्यान दें कि अभीष्ट शब्द जिस अर्थ/भाव के लिए प्रयुक्त हो रहा है उसके लिए कोई खास Preposition है कि नहीं। अगर है तो उस खास Preposition का प्रयोग करना वहाँ आवश्यक होगा।

1. He lives in India. (वह भारत में रहता है।)
Uses of Prepositions

2. He lives at Hajipur. (वह हाजीपुर में रहता है)
3. Man can live on milk diet. (मनुष्य दूध आहार पर जीवित रह सकता है)
4. We should live by honest labour. (हमलोगों को परिश्रम की कमाई खानी चाहिए)

अब हम कुछ शब्द और उनके साथ प्रयुक्त होनेवाले Appropriate Prepositions दे रहे हैं, जिनें ध्यान से पढ़े और समझें —

1. According to: You should do according to the rules.
2. Afraid of: I am not afraid of ghosts.
3. Agree with (a person): I agree with you.
4. Agree to (a proposal): I do not agree to your proposal.
5. Agree on (a point): We all agree on this point.
   (Note: We agree with a person; we agree to a proposal; we agree on a point.)
6. Angry with (a person): The teacher was angry with me.
7. Angry at (something): The teacher was angry at my mistake.
   (Note: We feel angry with a person at something.)
8. Apply to a person: She applied to the Principal.
9. Apply for something: She applied for three days’ leave.
   (Note: We apply to a person for something.)
10. Ashamed of: I am ashamed of my failure.
11. Belong to: This book belongs to me.
12. Blind of (the eye): He is blind of one eye.
13. Blind to (one’s fault): He is blind to his son’s fault.
14. Care for: You must care for your health. (care as a verb)
15. Care of: You must take care of your health. (care as a noun)
16. Busy with: He is busy with his work.
17. Congratulate on: He congratulated me on my success.
18. Consist of: Our family consists of five members.
19. Close to: He is very close to me.
20. Deal in (something): He deals in rice.
21. Deal with (a person): We should deal with our friends sincerely.
22. Die of: He died of cholera.
23. Faithful to: The dog is always faithful to his master.
24. Fond of: I am fond of sweets.
25. Full of: The pot is full of water.
27. Good at: Ravi is good at cricket.
28. Good to: He is good to me.
29. Interest in: I have deep interest in music.
30. Jealous of: He is jealous of me.
31. Junior to: Sita is junior to me.
32. Key to: Hard work is key to success.
33. Kind to: We should be kind to the animals
34. Laugh at: Don’t laugh at the poor.
35. Listen to: He is listening to the radio.
36. Live on: The cow lives on grass.
37. Look after: My mother looks after me.
38. Look at: Look at the blackboard.
39. Married to: Sita was married to Ram.
40. Obliged to/for: I shall be obliged to you for this.
41. Prefer to: I prefer coffee to tea.
42. Pray to: We pray to God everyday.
43. Proud of: I am proud of my brother.
44. Rich in: Jharkhand is rich in minerals.
45. Run after: He runs after money.
46. Reply to: I have replied to these letters.
47. Satisfied with: I am satisfied with you.
48. Sorry for: I am sorry for my mistakes.
49. Superior to: My pen is superior to your pen.
50. Sure of: I am sure of your success.
51. Taste for: I have no taste for music.
52. Thankful to/for: I am thankful to you for your help.
53. Tired of: I am tired of work.
54. True to: I am true to my word.
55. Wait for: I am waiting for Father.

Vocabulary: 1. according to — के अनुसार, 2. afraid of — भयभीत, ghost — भूत, 3. agree — सहमत, सहमत होना, 4. proposal — प्रस्ताव, 5. point — बिंदु, 8. apply — आवेदन करना, 10. ashamed — लग्जित, 11. belong — से संबंध रखना, 13. blind — अंधा, faults — खामियाँ, 14. care (v) — ध्यान रखना, 15. care (n) — ध्यान, 17. congratulate — बधाई देना,
success — सफलता, 18. consist — (से, का) बना होना, 19. close — घनिष्ठ, 20. deal — व्यापार करना, 21. deal — व्यापार करना, 23. faithful — वफादार, निष्ठावान, 24. fond — प्रिय, 29. interest — रुचि, 30. jealous — ईर्ष्यालु, 32. key — कुंजी, 36. live — जीवित रहना, 37. look after — देखभाल करना, 38. look — देखना, 40. obliged — आभारी, 41. prefer — (अधिक) चाहना, तरजीह देना, 43. proud — गर्वित, 45. run after — के पीछे पड़ा रहना, 46. reply — जवाब देना, 47. satisfied — संतुष्ट, 48. sorry — दुखी, 49. superior — बेहतर, 50. sure — आश्वस्त, 51. taste — स्वाद, रुचि, शुक्र, 52. thankful — कृतज्ञ, एहसासमंद, 53. tired — थका हुआ, 54. true — सच्चा, निष्ठावान, निष्कपट, 55. wait — इंतजार करना।

EXAMPLES WORKED OUT


1. He lives ...... Bihar. (in, at, on)
2. I live ...... Arrah. (in, at, on)
3. The fan is ...... my head. (on, at, over)
4. He is writing ...... a pen. (by, with, over)
5. There is a book ...... the table. (at, on, from)
6. She bought it ...... Rs. 10. (for, on, over)
7. The book was written ...... him. (with, from, by)
8. He jumped ...... the river. (in, into, on)
9. He came ...... train. (with, on, by)
10. What is the time ...... your watch? (by, in, with)
11. He is sitting ...... the room. (in, at, on)
12. He came here ...... Monday. (since, on, at)
13. He came ...... 5 o’clock. (since, on, at)
14. I was born ...... 1980. (at, on, in)
15. He is ...... Ravi and Gopi. (among, between, in)

Ans. 1. in, 2. at, 3. over, 4. with, 5. on, 6. for, 7. by, 8. into, 9. by, 10. by, 11. in, 12. on, 13. at, 14. in, 15. between.


1. He came ...... 6 o’clock ...... the evening.
2. The child fell ...... the well.
3. He has a hat ...... his head.
4. Sita is ...... school.
5. C comes ...... D.
6. I go to school ...... bus.
7. It has been raining ...... five hours.
8. She has been sleeping ...... morning.
9. We make curd ...... milk.
10. We play ...... the evening.
11. The chair is made ...... wood.
12. I don’t agree ...... you.
13. This book belongs ...... me.
14. He is junior ...... me.
15. They are tired ...... work.
16. Please listen ...... me.
17. Why are you laughing ...... him?
18. My teacher is very kind ...... me.
19. He cut the apple ...... a knife.
20. He was born ...... 10th July ...... 1970.

Ans. 1. at, in, 2. into, 3. on, 4. at, 5. before, 6. by, 7. for, 8. since, 9. from, 10. in, 11. of, 12. with, 13. to, 14. to, 15. of, 16. to, 17. at, 18. to, 19. with, 20. on, in.

EXERCISE 53

Direction: Fill in the blanks with suitable prepositions.

1. I do not know ...... him. (about, for)
2. It is ...... ten o’clock. (of, about)
3. The sky is ...... the earth. (on, above)
4. November comes ...... October. (after, before)
5. July comes ...... August. (after, before)
6. The mangoes were divided ...... my two sons. (among, between)
7. The mangoes were divided ...... my four sons. (among, between)
8. He will come ...... the morning. (in, at)
9. He came ...... 7 o’clock. (in, at)
10. She lives ...... Nepal. (in, at)
11. Rice sells ...... Rs. 12/- a kilo. (at, by)
12. My son is good ...... cricket. (in, at)
13. The work was done ...... him. (at, by)
14. He killed the bird ...... a stone. (with, by)
15. What is the time ...... your watch? (in, by)
16. He came ...... bus. (by, on)
17. This frock is ...... my sister. (about, for)
18. I have been running ...... an hour. (since, for)  
19. She has been running ...... 8 o'clock. (since, for)  
20. I bought the bicycle ...... Rs. 500. (at, for)

**EXERCISE 54**

*Direction: Fill in the blanks with suitable prepositions.*

1. He has come ...... Patna. (in, from)  
2. What is he doing ...... the room? (at, in)  
3. My brother is ...... the Navy. (at, in)  
4. She jumped ...... the river. (in, into)  
5. He was swimming ...... the river. (in, into)  
6. She was sitting ...... her sister. (beside, besides)  
7. What is ...... the box? (in, at)  
8. The book is ...... the box. (in, at)  
9. This box is made ...... steel. (from, of)  
10. He hid ...... the tree. (on, behind)  
11. Give me a kilo ...... rice. (of, at)  
12. She died ...... cholera. (of, from)  
13. He is a member ...... my team. (of, at)  
14. I am not ...... her. (besides, against)  
15. He will come ...... Monday. (at, on)  
16. Stand up ...... the bench. (at, on)  
17. All ...... one were killed. (in, but)  
18. There was an umbrella ...... my head. (over, on)  
19. It is five ...... eleven. (to, by)  
20. The cat was ...... the table. (under, over)

**EXERCISE 55**

*Direction: Fill in the blanks with suitable prepositions.*

1. She is writing ...... a pen. (by, with)  
2. She was taught ...... me. (by, to)  
3. He will come ...... a month. (for, within)  
4. She cut the apple ...... a knife. (by, within)  
5. Can you live ...... air? (without, with)  
6. The letter was written ...... him ...... a pen. (with, on, by)  
7. You should do according ...... the rules. (by, to)  
8. I am proud ...... my son. (with, of)  
9. I am not satisfied ...... your work. (with, by)  
10. I agree ...... you ...... that point. (on, with, to)
11. You should take care ...... your health.    (at, of)
12. The merchant deals ...... rice.        (in, with)
13. She has no taste ...... music.        (of, for)
14. He has not replied ...... my letter.  (to, by)
15. I am fond ...... music.             (of, to)
16. She was married ...... my cousin.     (to, with)
17. Who are you waiting ......?          (for, of)
18. This book consists ...... 100 pages.  (with, of)
19. I am not jealous ...... you.           (for, of)
20. Early rising is key ...... my good health.  (of, to)

EXERCISE 56

Direction: Fill in the blanks with suitable prepositions.

1. You should not laugh ...... him.
2. I am senior ...... you.
3. I prefer milk ...... tea.
4. She is good ...... English.
5. I congratulated him ...... his success.
6. You should be ashamed ...... your conduct.
7. What are you afraid ......?
8. I pray ...... God everyday.
9. He is angry ...... me ...... my behaviour.
10. She is tired ...... work.
11. I am true ...... my word.
12. I am sorry ...... this.
13. Why is she close ...... you?
14. Please listen ...... me.
15. She is obliged ...... you for your help.
16. Are you sure ...... your success?
17. The rich man runs ...... money.
18. He has applied ...... the Principal ...... leave.
19. This car belongs ...... my uncle.
20. I don't care ...... her.

EXERCISE 57

Direction: Fill in the blanks with suitable prepositions.

1. Mr Gupta is blind ...... one eye.
2. Can man live ...... grass?
3. I am not interested ...... music.
4. You should give ...... smoking.
5. Look ...... the blackboard.
6. I bought this hat ...... ten rupees.
7. I will go ...... Patna ...... car.
8. Wait ...... me. Don’t go ...... me.
9. May I pay ...... cheque?
10. The fact is known ...... me.
11. It is now six minutes ...... ten.
12. The train is ...... to start.
13. No one writes to me ...... you.
14. What can I do ...... you?
15. He spoke ...... me ...... the evening.
16. He was blind ...... birth.
17. The train starts ...... Patna and goes ...... Delhi.
18. I am thankful ...... you ...... your help.
19. The vegetables were cut ...... Mother ...... a knife.
20. I am interested ...... chess but I am not good ...... it.
24. Punctuation and the Use of Capital Letters

किसी भी भाषा में Punctuation का महत्वपूर्ण स्थान होता है। किसी sentence या passage में अर्थ की स्पष्टता या समुचित विराम के लिए निर्धारित चिह्नों के प्रयोग की विधि को Punctuation कहते हैं। Punctuation Marks की सहायता से वाक्यों को पढ़ने, बोलने और उनके अर्थ समझने में सुगमता होती है।

अंग्रेजी में मुख्य Punctuation Marks इस प्रकार हैं—

1. Full Stop ( . )
2. Comma ( , )
3. Semicolon ( ; )
4. Colon ( : )
5. Question Mark ( ? )
6. Exclamation Mark ( ! )
7. Hyphen ( - )
8. Dash ( — )
9. Apostrophe ( ’ )
10. Inverted Commas ( “ ……. ” ) या ( ‘ ……. ’ )

अब इन चिह्नों और इनके प्रयोग पर विचार करें।

1. Full Stop ( . )

1. Interrogative, Optative और Exclamatory Sentences को छोड़कर किसी भी तरह के पूर्ण वाक्य के अंत में Full Stop का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

He is a boy.
Go there.
Don't do this.
He asked me what my name was.

2. Abbreviations और Initial letters के बाद Full Stop का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे—

B.A. B.D.O. Nov. L.P. School
M.A. M.L.A. Dec. N.C.C. Officer
Ph.D. U.S.A. R.S.S. T. K. Jha
3. आजकल Dr, Mr, Mrs, St (Saint) के बाद Full Stop का प्रयोग नहीं होता है, क्योंकि अब ये पूरे शब्द की भांति प्रयुक्त होते हैं, संक्षिप्त शब्द की भांति नहीं।

4. 1st, 2nd, 3rd इत्यादि के बाद Full Stop का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

5. अगर कोई वाक्य Abbreviation से अंत होता है, तो वाक्य के अंत में एक ही Full Stop दिया जाता है, दो नहीं। जैसे –

He is an I.A.S.
I am an M.A.

Come at 5 p.m.

2. Comma ( , )

Comma थोड़े ठहराव का सुचक है। इसके कुछ मुख्य प्रयोग इस प्रकार हैं –

1. अगर वाक्य में एक ही Part of Speech के दो या दो से अधिक शब्द एक के बाद एक आएँ तो उनके बीच Comma दिया जाएगा, जैसा कि इन उदाहरणों से स्पष्ट है।

Ram, Mohan, Sohan and Gopal are my friends.
He is tall, gentle and handsome.
He is always eating, drinking and dancing.

2. जब किसी शब्द के दोहराया जाता है, तब उसके बीच Comma का प्रयोग होता है।

Go, go; I don’t need you. Try, try again.

3. वाक्य में प्रयुक्त Apposition पद के पहले और वाक्य में Comma का प्रयोग किया जाता है। इस प्रकार Apposition पद दो Commas के बीच में आ जाता है। जैसे –

I, Ram, am a student.
Rajendra Prasad, the first President of India, was a great man.
He, the son of a rich man, is very proud.

4. कुछ वाक्यों में words of address का प्रयोग रहता है। अगर words of address वाक्य के शुरू में रहता है, तो ठीक इसके बाद Comma लगता है। अगर words of address वाक्य के अंत में रहता है, तो Comma ठीक इसके पहले लगता है। अगर वाक्य के बीच में words of address रहता है, तो इसकी दोनों बगल Comma का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे –

Mohan, where are you going?
Get out, Ram.
May I go out, Sir?
What are you doing, boys?
I know, Suresh, that only you can do this.
5. कभी-कभी वाक्य के बीच में बाहर से words/phrases/clauses को रख दिया जाता है जिसे अगर निकाल भी दिया जाए तो वाक्य के construction में कोई अंतर नहीं आता है। ऐसे words/phrases/clauses की दोनों तरफ Commas का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे —

He, however, passed the examination.
I, therefore, request you to grant me leave.
He is, after all, my friend.
You will, I hope, agree with me.

6. Yes/No के बाद comma का प्रयोग होता है, अगर इसके बाद कोई वाक्य आता है। जैसे —

Yes, I will help you.
No, you can’t.

7. चिठ्ठियों में अभिवादन (salutation) और विदाई (words of leave-taking) के बाद Comma दिया जाता है। जैसे —

Dear Suresh, Yours faithfully.
Dear Mother, Yours truly.

8. Question Tag को Main Clause से अलग करने के लिए Comma का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —

You will go tomorrow, won’t you?
He is ready, isn’t he?
She cannot do, can she?

9. वाक्य में प्रयुक्त Direct Speech को वाक्य के शेष भाग से अलग करने के लिए Comma का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे —

He said, “I am ready.”
“I don’t know her,” she said.
“You know,” said she, “that I don’t like him.”

Note: अगर Direct Speech में Question/Exclamation रहे और उसके बाद Reporting Verb आए, तो अभीष्ट Direct Speech के बाद Comma का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। जैसे —

“Where are you going?” he asked me.
“Well done!” he said.

3. Semicolon (; )

1. Comma का प्रयोग वहाँ होता है, जहाँ कम ठहराव की जरूरत पड़ती है। Full Stop का प्रयोग वहाँ होता है, जहाँ अधिक ठहराव की जरूरत पड़ती है। वहीं Semicolon का प्रयोग वहाँ होता है, जहाँ Comma से कुछ अधिक और Full Stop से कुछ कम ठहराव की जरूरत पड़ती है।
2. Semicolon का प्रयोग वहाँ होता है, जहाँ Full Stop का प्रयोग हो सकता है। लेकिन यदि हम विभिन्न Principal Clauses को बिना linking word के एक ही वाक्य में प्रयोग करना चाहें ताकि अभीष्ट विचार अधिक तीव्रता से एक साथ स्पष्ट हो सके, तो ऐसे Clauses को Semicolon से जोड़ा जाएगा; जैसे —

Come early; go early.
Honesty is the best policy; it inspires us with greater confidence.

4. Colon ( : )

1. Colon का प्रयोग किसी सूची (list) या उदाहरण (example) को आरंभ करने के लिए होता है। जैसे —

The following words are nouns: cat, cow, boy and girl.
I want the following: books, pens and notebooks.

2. Direct Speech तथा Quotation के पहले Colon का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे —

He said: “I will do it.”
Shakespeare said: “Sweet are the uses of adversity.”

3. Dialogue में वक्ता के नाम के बाद Colon का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —

Teacher: What are you doing?
Ram: Sir, I am doing my lesson.

4. जब किसी शब्द के बाद Usual definition या description देना होता है, तब उस शब्द के बाद Colon दिया जाता है। जैसे —

Noun: A noun is a naming word.
Albatross: A large white seabird with long wings.

5. Question Mark ( ? )

1. Interrogative Sentence के अंत में Question Mark का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —

Who are you?
What is your name?
He said to me, “What are you doing?”

Note: Indirect question के बाद Full Stop का प्रयोग होता है,

Question Mark का नहीं। जैसे —

He asked me what my name was.
I don’t know who he was.

2. Question Tag के बाद Question Mark का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —

You are going tomorrow, aren’t you?
6. Exclamation Mark (!)

1. Optative Sentence और Exclamatory Sentence के अंत में Exclamation Mark का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —

May God help you!
What a beautiful scene it is!
How lovely she looks!

2. Interjections/Phrases/Sentences जिनसे आकस्मिक भाव व्यक्त होता है, उनके बाद Exclamation Mark का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —

Alas!
Oh!
Nonsense!
Hello!
Oh! Enough!
Well done!

7. Hyphen (-)

1. अगर किसी वाक्य का कोई शब्द पंक्ति के अंत में जगह के अभाव के कारण पूरा नहीं आता है, तो उस अपूर्ण शब्द के बाद Hyphen दिया जाता है और उस शब्द के शेष भाग की अपारी पंक्ति के आरंभ में लिखा जाता है।

   (a) dog, cow, bag, box, ox जैसे एक syllable वाले शब्दों को divide नहीं किया जाता। इसे जरूर लिखें, पूरा लिखें। Hyphen की गर्दन से दो lines में न लिखें।

   (b) पंक्ति के अंत में किसी शब्द का केवल एक अक्षर लिखकर या एक अक्षर छोड़कर Hyphen कम न दें। जैसे — grammar को g-rammar या gramma-r नहीं लिखें।

   (c) किसी शब्द का syllable पूरा हो जाने के बाद ही Hyphen दें। जैसे — beau-ti-ful, im-me-di-ate। अगर beautiful वाक्य के अंत में लिखना हो और पूरा न आए तो beau के बाद Hyphen दे या beauti के बाद Hyphen दें।

2. 21 से 99 तक के compound numbers को शब्दों में लिखने के लिए Hyphen का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे —

   21 = twenty-one
   62 = sixty-two
   89 = eighty-nine
   431 = four hundred and thirty-one
   855 = eight hundred and fifty-five
   5153 = five thousand, one hundred and fifty-three

3. यदि Prefix के लगने से कोई vowel लगातार दो बार आ जाता है, तो अभीष्ट Prefix के बाद Hyphen दिया जाता है। जैसे —

   co-operation, re-elect, pre-eminent.

4. अंग्रेजी में बहुत सारे compound और complex words हैं, जिनके formation में Hyphen का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —

   sister-in-law, brother-in-law, a five-rupee note, a one-eyed man, Vice-President, non-violence, mid-June, ex-M.I.A., Ex-Principal.
8. Dash ( — )

1. कभी-कभी जहाँ Colon का प्रयोग किया जा सकता है वहाँ Dash का प्रयोग किया जाता है। list of things, examples या साक्ष्य में पहले कहीं हुई बातों के बाद अगर उस संबंध में कोई explanation / illustration / statement देना होता है, तो Dash का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे —

   I want the following — ten notebooks, two pens, four pencils and one ink-pot.

2. दो संख्याओं के बीच Dash का प्रयोग दी हुई प्रथम और अंतिम संख्या के बीच की लुत संख्या या संख्याओं को सूचित करने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे —

   Chapters I — XI (एक से व्यारह तक)
   PP 10 — 100 (पृष्ठ 10 से पृष्ठ 100 तक)

3. Quotation के प्रारंभ में Dash का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे —

   The teacher said — “Honesty is the best policy.”

9. Apostrophe ( ’ )

1. Contractions (संक्षिप्त शब्दों) में लुत्त अक्षर या संख्या के स्थान पर Apostrophe का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे —

   Ma’am — for Madam  I’ll — for I will
   can’t — for cannot  It’s — for it is
   aren’t — for are not  o’clock — for of the clock
   I’m — for I am ‘82 — for 1982

2. Noun के Possessive Form में Apostrophe का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे — Ram’s cow, the cow’s milk, the boys’ names.

3. संख्या तथा अक्षरों को Plural बनाने में ’s का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे —

   Add four 3’s and the result is 12.
   Your t’s and I’s look alike.

   Note: संख्या यदि शब्दों में लिखी जाती है, तो उसका plural -s/es लगाकर बनाया जाता है; ’s लगाकर नहीं। जैसे —

   Sachin hit three fours and two sixes.

10. Inverted Commas

   Inverted Commas को Quotation Marks भी कहा जाता है। Inverted Commas single ( ‘…….’ ) भी हो सकते हैं और double ( “…….” ) भी। आप दोनों में से किसी एक का प्रयोग कर सकते हैं। इनके मुख्य प्रयोग इस प्रकार हैं —
1. Inverted Commas का प्रयोग Quotation और Direct Speech को घेरने के लिए किया जाता है। जैसे —

He said, “What are you doing?”
Shakespeare says, “Sweet are the uses of adversity.”

2. Inverted Commas का प्रयोग पुस्तक, कहानी, कविता, लेख, अखबार आदि के नामों के साथ भी होता है। जैसे —

Have you read “Hamlet”?
‘Ode on Solitude’ is a famous poem.

3. वाक्य में प्रयुक्त ऐसे words/phrases को भी Inverted Commas के भीतर रखा जाता है, जिनपर विशेष ध्यान (special attention) देने की जरूरत है या जो context में unusual है। जैसे —

The word ‘please’ is a very useful word.

4. अंगर Quotation के भीतर भी Quotation हो, तो भीतरी Quotation के लिए जैसे Inverted Commas का प्रयोग करते हैं जैसा Main Quotation के लिए नहीं किया गया है। जैसे —

He asked me, “Have you read ‘Hamlet’?”
He asked me, ‘Have you read “Hamlet”?’

The Use of Capital Letters

Capital Letters के प्रयोग इस प्रकार है —

1. प्रत्येक वाक्य का पहला अक्षर Capital Letter से लिखा जाता है। जैसे —

He is my brother.
What are you doing?
Take the medicine in time.

2. Poem की प्रत्येक पंक्ति का पहला अक्षर Capital Letter से लिखा जाता है। जैसे —

She dwelt among the untrodden ways
Beside the Springs of Dove;
A maid whom there were none to praise
And very few to love.

Note: बहुत-से आधुनिक कवि अब इस नियम को नहीं मानते।

3. Inverted Commas के अंदर शुरू होनेवाले प्रत्येक वाक्य का पहला अक्षर Capital Letter से लिखा जाता है। जैसे —

He said to me, “What do you want?”
“She is ill,” said her mother to the doctor.
Punctuation and the Use of Capital Letters

अगर Direct Speech / Quotation में प्रयुक्त एक ही वाक्य दो या दो से अधिक भागों में बंटा हो, तो केवल पहले भाग का पहला अक्षर Capital letter से लिखा जाएगा। जैसे —

"I am your friend," said he, "so you should help me."

4. किसी व्यक्ति के नाम में प्रयुक्त प्रथम शब्द का पहला अक्षर Capital होता है। जैसे —

Ram Kumar Singh, Gopi Mehta, Asha Kumari, Lucy, John.

5. किसी व्यक्ति के नाम के पहले आनेवाले title का पहला अक्षर Capital होता है। जैसे —

Mr, Sir, Dr, Lt.
Mrs, Miss, Prof, Col.

6. गौं, शहर, राज्य, देश, महादेश इत्यादि के नामों का पहला अक्षर Capital होता है। जैसे —

Chamanpur, Patna, Bihar, India, Asia
Sheohar, Ranchi, Punjab, Nepal, Africa

7. पहाड़, नदी, ट्रेन, जहाज़ आदि के नामों का पहला अक्षर Capital होता है। जैसे —

The Himalayas, The Toofan Express, The Vikrant
The Ganges, The Taj Express, The Sagar Samrat

8. पुस्तक, नाटक, समाचारपत्र, पत्रिका आदि के नामों में प्रयुक्त सभी शब्दों का पहला अक्षर Capital होता है। सिर्फ Article, Conjunction या Preposition बीच में आएं, तो वे small letters से लिखे जाएंगे। जैसे —

The Ramayana, The Times of India, Pratityogita Kiran, etc.

9. story, poem, report, article या chapter of a book के title में प्रयुक्त सभी शब्दों का पहला अक्षर Capital होता है। सिर्फ Article, Conjunction या Preposition बीच में आएं, तो वे small letters से लिखे जाएंगे। जैसे —

Ode on Solitude, Gandhiji as a World Citizen, etc.

10. दिन, महीना, भाषा, समुद्रावधि, धर्म, लोहार आदि के नामों का पहला अक्षर Capital होता है। जैसे —

Sunday, March, Hindi, Holi, Diwali, Muslim, etc.

11. Political Parties के नाम का प्रथम शब्द Capital से शुरू होता है। जैसे —

the Congress Party, the Socialist Party, the B.J.P.
the Janata Party, the Muslim League, the C.P.I.
12. ऐतिहासिक घटनाओं में आए प्रत्येक शब्द का पहला अक्षर Capital होता है। जैसे —

Independence Day    French Revolution    World War I
Republic Day        the Middle Ages      the Battle of Panipat

13. पद्वी (title) और ओहहरा (designation) में प्रयुक्त प्रत्येक शब्द का पहला अक्षर Capital होता है। जैसे —

Chief Minister  Chief Justice  Principal
Prime Minister  District Magistrate  Headmaster

14. Proper Noun से वने शब्दों का पहला अक्षर Capital होता है। जैसे —

Indian  American  Bihari  British
Russian  Japanese  Punjabi  Greek

15. अधिकांश Abbreviations में प्रयुक्त प्रत्येक letter की Capital से लिखा जाता है। जैसे —

I.A.S.  M.A.  M.P.  U.S.A.

Note: (a) जब abbreviation में एक से अधिक letters संयुक्त रहता है, तब केवल पहला letter Capital होता है, जैसा कि इन उदाहरणों से स्पष्ट है—


(b) कुछ abbreviations small letters से भी लिखे जाते हैं। जैसे —
a.m.  p.m.  e.g.  etc  m.p.h.

16. Pronoun I, Interjection O तथा Personified word का पहला letter Capital से लिखा जाता है। जैसे —

He knew that I was not there.
O that she were alive!
O death! Come soon.

17. अगर God का प्रयोग सर्वशक्तिमान ईश्वर के लिए हो, तो God और उनके लिए प्रयुक्त Pronoun (He/Him/His) एवं अन्य शब्दों का पहला अक्षर Capital Letter से लिखा जाएगा। जैसे —

None can challenge God.    God is the Father of fathers.
God is Almighty.    God is kind to His creatures.

Note: अगर God का प्रयोग देवता के लिए हो, तो God और उनके लिए प्रयुक्त Pronouns Capital Letters से आरंभ नहीं होंगे। जैसे —
The god of fire will burn you if you don't obey him.

18. जब Father / Mother / Uncle / Aunt से वक्ता के अपने Father/
Mother/Uncle/Aunt का बोध हो और इनके पहले कोई Determiner (the, your, my, his, etc) प्रयुक्त न रहे, यानी इनका प्रयोग Proper Noun की तरह हो, तब इनका पहला अक्षर Capital Letter से लिखा जाएगा। इनके पहले Determiners प्रयुक्त रहने पर इन्हें small letter से लिखा जाएगा। जैसे—

Father agreed but Mother didn’t.
I am waiting for Uncle and Aunt.
My father is very poor.
When is your uncle/aunt/mother/father coming?

**EXAMPLES WORKED OUT**

*Direction: Punctuate the following, using capital letters where necessary—*

1. My father is a bdo
2. sita gita and leela are dancing
3. try try again
4. i mohan am a student
5. where are you going mohan
6. he is after all my brother
7. yes i am ready to help you
8. you are ready aren’t you
9. he said i am ready
10. the following words are nouns cow dog cat boy and girl
11. may god help you
12. what a beautiful place it is
13. alas my cat is dead
14. my father in law is sixty two years old
15. i cant help rams brother
16. he said to me what is your name
17. i know dr suman and prof mathur
18. the ganges is a holy river of india
19. i read the ramayana everyday
20. have you read ode on solitude
21. i shall come in march
22. we must believe in god
23. i am waiting for father
24. i love my father very much

**Answers:**

1. My father is a B.D.O.
2. Sita, Gita and Leela are dancing.
3. Try, try again.
4. I, Mohan, am a student.
5. Where are you going, Mohan?
6. He is, after all, my brother.
7. Yes, I am ready to help you.
8. You are ready, aren’t you?
9. He said, “I am ready.”
10. The following words are nouns: cow, dog, cat, boy and girl.
11. May God help you!
12. What a beautiful place it is!
13. Alas! My cat is dead.
14. My father-in-law is sixty-two years old.
15. I can’t help Ram’s brother.
16. He said to me, “What is your name?”
17. I know Dr Suman and Prof Mathur.
18. The Ganges is a holy river of India.
19. I read the Ramayana everyday.
20. Have you read ‘Ode on Solitude’?
21. I shall come in March.
22. We must believe in God.
23. I am waiting for Father.
24. I love my father very much.

**EXERCISE 58**

*Direction: Punctuate the following, using capital letters where necessary—*

1. r l mishra is an mla
2. i am a ba
3. i dont like mohan sohan ravi and manoj
4. try try again for success
5. jawaharlal nehru the first prime minister of india was a great man
6. she the daughter of a rich man is very proud
7. i sohan promise to help you
8. mohan you should help me
9. what are you doing here my son
10. i love you suresh
11. i therefore request you to help me
12. he is i think not a good man
13. no you cant stay here
14. she is tall isn't she
15. she said to me what is your name
16. come early go early
17. i need the following a cup tea water and sugar
18. pronoun a pronoun stands for a noun
19. who is miss lata
20. may you die of cholera
21. what a dark night it is
22. well done i am proud of you
23. my sister in law is an ma
24. i cant do without your cooperation
25. i need twenty five rupees
26. aren't you rams brother
27. the teacher said who can define the word determiner
28. where is ram going with his father

**EXERCISE 59**

*Direction: Punctuate the following, using capital letters where necessary—*

1. i know mr john and mrs call
2. he said to me do you know dr kapoor
3. mount everest is the highest peak of the himalayas
4. people worship the ganges in india
5. have you read as you like it
6. he will come on the first sunday of january
7. some indians know both hindi and urdu
8. when does the prime minister arrive here
9. who is the main leader of the congress party
10. god is kind to his children
11. why has father not come yet
12. i think uncle will like it
13. i think my father will not like it
14. a hindu celebrates deepawali with great joy
15. have you seen the wind is a beautiful poem
16. the play as you like it has been written by shakespeare
17. the teacher said god is almighty
18. we celebrate the independence day every year
19. the word excuse me is a very popular word
20. our vice president is an ex mp
25. Voice

Voice: Voice किसी वाक्य में प्रयुक्त verb का वह रूप है जो यह दिखाता है कि वो तो कर्ता कुछ करता है या स्वयं कर्ता पर ही कुछ घटित होता है। Voice दो प्रकार के होते हैं —

1. Active Voice
2. Passive Voice

1. Active Voice: यदि किसी वाक्य का कर्ता क्रिया का संपादन करता है, तो उस वाक्य में प्रयुक्त Verb को Active Voice में होना समझा जाता है।

A verb is said to be in the active voice when its form shows that the person or thing denoted by the subject does something.

2. Passive Voice: यदि वाक्य का कर्ता सक्रिय नहीं है, क्रिया का संपादन नहीं करता है, बल्कि क्रिया उसी पर संपादित होती है, तो प्रयुक्त verb को Passive Voice में होना समझा जाता है।

A verb is said to be in the passive voice when its form shows that something is done to the person or thing denoted by the subject.

अर्थात्

यदि Subject doer है, तो Verb Active Voice में
यदि Subject receiver of the action है, तो Verb Passive Voice में

इन वाक्यों पर विचार करें —

1. Ram teaches. राम पढ़ाता है।
2. Ram is taught. राम को पढ़ाया जाता है।

यहाँ प्रथम वाक्य में राम पढ़ाने का काम करता है अर्थात् वह doer (काम करनेवाला) है। अतः प्रयुक्त Verb ‘teaches’ Active Voice में हुआ। दूसरे वाक्य में राम कुछ करता नहीं है, बल्कि उसी पर याद करने का काम संपादित होता है। यहाँ Ram doer नहीं है। अतः प्रयुक्त verb ‘is taught’ Passive Voice में हुआ।
Active Voice को Passive Voice में बदलने का नियम
इसे ध्यान में देखें और समझें—

Ram eats a mango.  
A mango is eaten by Ram.

Active Voice  
Passive Voice

Voice का interchanging करते बक्त Active Verb के Object को Passive Verb का Subject बना दिया जाता है और Active Verb के Subject को Passive Verb का agent बना दिया जाता है। अगर यह agent वाक्य के अर्थ/भाव को सप्तत करने के लिए आवश्यक हुआ तो इसे clause/sentence के अंत में by या अन्य उपयुक्त preposition लगाकर रख दिया जाता है, अथवा इसका लोप कर दिया जाता है। विशेष ध्यान Verb पर देने की जासूस होती है।

Active Verb को Passive में बदलने के लिए अभीष्ट Main Verb को Past Participle Tense में बदला जाता है और उसके पहले Verb ‘to be’ का प्रयोग उपयुक्त Number, Person और Tense में किया जाता है।

Note: Pronoun जब subject के रूप में प्रयुक्त होता है, तब वह Nominative Case में रहता है और जब Object के रूप में प्रयुक्त होता है, तब वह Objective Case में रहता है।

Nominative Case  
Objective Case
I, we, you, he, she, it, they  
me, us, you, him, her, it, them

अब विभिन्न Tenses के Active Verbs को Passive में बदलने की प्रक्रिया पर विचार करें—

1. PRESENT INDEFINITE TENSE

[ Passive Verb Form: am / is / are + V^3 ]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ram eats a mango.</td>
<td>A mango is eaten by Ram.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ram eats mangoes.</td>
<td>Mangoes are eaten by Ram.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I love him.</td>
<td>He is loved by me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He loves me.</td>
<td>I am loved by him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She teaches you.</td>
<td>You are taught by her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We respect him.</td>
<td>He is respected by us.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE 60

Direction: Change the following into the passive voice—

1. Mohan eats a mango.  
2. Mohan eats mangoes.
3. I eat a mango.
4. We eat mangoes.
5. I love you.
6. You love me.
7. She helps them.
8. They help her.
9. They help me.
10. We help him.
12. Sohan beats me.
13. I like it.
14. She sings a song.
15. I write a letter.
16. My brother loves me.
17. I love my brother.
18. This boy helps me.
19. I help that boy.
20. She sells toys.
21. They cook rice.
22. He posts the letter.
23. She likes your brother.
24. Your brother likes her.
25. He helps everybody.
26. I follow the rules.
27. I help the poor.
28. My father likes this.
29. I help those poor boys.
30. They answer the question.

**Note:** इन वाक्यों पर विचार करें—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>She loves me.</td>
<td>I am loved by her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People speak Hindi in Bihar.</td>
<td>Hindi is spoken in Bihar.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

यहाँ प्रथम वाक्य के Passive में by + agent (by her) का प्रयोग हुआ है, जो आवश्यक है। दूसरे वाक्य के Passive में by + agent (by people) का प्रयोग नहीं हुआ है क्योंकि यहाँ Passive Sentence के अर्थ को स्पष्ट करने के लिए by + agent देना आवश्यक नहीं है। Active से Passive बनाने के लिए Agent का प्रयोग तभी किया जाता है जब agent का प्रयोग वाक्य के अर्थ को स्पष्ट करने के लिए अत्यंत आवश्यक होता है। जब Active Verb का Subject one, someone, somebody, nobody, people या अन्य vague/understood/common Subject रहता है, तब Passive Verb प्रयुक्त होने पर इसका लोप हो जाता है। कुछ वाक्यों में I, we, you, they, he, she, a man, a boy जैसे agents का भी आवश्यकतानुसार Passive Verb प्रयुक्त होने पर लोप कर दिया जाता है। अतः आप वाक्य के अर्थ को समझने हुए यह निर्णय लें कि अपरिष्कृत Passive Sentence में Agent का प्रयोग आवश्यक है या नहीं।

**Solved Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We expect good news.</td>
<td>Good news is expected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No one respects a dishonest man in our society.</td>
<td>A dishonest man is not respected in our society.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In India people worship the cow.</td>
<td>In India the cow is worshipped.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXERCISE 61

Direction: Change the following into the passive voice –

[Hint: तथापि 5 और 8 में ‘ही’ by + agent का प्रयोग करें, अन्य के साथ नहीं।]

1. People speak English all over the world.
2. People grow cotton in India.
3. We expect good news.
4. In our country we exploit the poor.
5. Everyday my father teaches me.
6. People remember Bhagat Singh for his bravery.
7. Everyone hates Mohan because he is a thief.
8. Our leaders misguide us.
9. We keep butter here.
10. One uses milk for making curd and sweets.

2. PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE

[Passive Verb Form: am / is / are + being + V3]

Active
I am eating a mango.
They are singing songs.
He is helping his mother.
She is vexing me.
They are doing it.
They are cutting the old trees. The old trees are being cut.

Passive
A mango is being eaten by me.
Songs are being sung (by them).
His mother is being helped by him.
I am being vexed by her.
It is being done by them.

EXERCISE 62

Direction: Turn the following into the passive voice –

1. She is eating a mango.
2. She is eating mangoes.
3. I am writing a letter.
4. He is helping me.
5. He is helping us.
6. They are helping her.
7. I am learning it.
8. She is drawing a picture.
9. He is cleaning the car.
10. The cat is drinking milk.
11. He is cutting the tree.
12. He is cutting the trees.
13. She is cooking food.
14. They are selling books.
15. She is doing nothing.
16. She is cheating me.
17. They are painting the wall.
18. I am opening the door.
19. They are watching the match.
20. I am solving the sum.

Solved Examples:

1. Active They are doing nothing against me.
   Passive Nothing is being done against me.
2. Active She is looking at me.
   Passive I am being looked at by her.
3. Active She is watching you.
   Passive You are being watched by her.

EXERCISE 63

Direction: Turn the following into the passive voice —

[ Hint: 2, 4, 5 और 10 में by + agent देने की जरूरत नहीं है। ]

1. He is answering the question.
2. The doctor is examining the patient.
3. The children are painting the wall.
4. They are cutting the old trees.
5. We are doing nothing against you.
6. Some boys are helping the poor man.
7. He is watching you.
8. She is beating her youngest son.
9. The nurse is looking after the patient.
10. They are doing nothing for the people of India.

3. PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

[ Passive Verb Form: have / has + been + V^3 ]

Active Passive
I have eaten a mango. A mango has been eaten by me.
She has finished the work. The work has been finished by her.
They have cheated me. I have been cheated by them.
She has helped us. We have been helped by her.
Ram has disturbed them. They have been disturbed by Ram.
Someone has stolen my pen. My pen has been stolen.
He has cut his finger. His finger has been cut.
They have published the result. The result has been published.
EXERCISE 64

Direction: Put the following into the passive voice —

1. I have killed two tigers.
2. She has cheated me.
3. I have helped her.
4. They have helped us.
5. He has taught her.
6. This boy has made it.
7. Ram has built the house.
8. She has invited me.
9. He has cut the trees.
10. Sita has written a letter.
11. Ram has seen me.
12. Moti has broken the glass.
13. They have followed it.
14. I have liked this.
15. I have loved you.
16. She has taught him.
17. He has cheated her.
18. Mohan has learnt it.
19. He has bought a car.
20. I have informed them.

Solved Examples:

1. Active Someone has stolen my car.
   Passive My car has been stolen.

2. Active No one has seen that mad man for ten days.
   Passive That mad man has not been seen for ten days.

EXERCISE 65

Direction: Change the following into the passive voice —

[Hint: 3, 4, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 13 और 14 में by + agent देने की जरूरत नहीं है।]

1. They have seen the ghost.
2. You have made several mistakes.
3. The police have caught the thief.
4. Someone has broken the glass.
5. We have bought some books.
6. Someone has picked my pocket.
7. He has hurt his leg in an accident.
8. No one has said anything about it.
9. They have published the result.
10. They have killed that innocent child.
11. Shakespeare has written this beautiful poem.
12. The mob has broken all the shop windows.
13. Somebody has invited you to dinner.
14. Someone has stolen my car.
15. Some of our neighbours have done this.

Note: Present Perfect Continuous Tense, Past Perfect Continuous Tense, Future Continuous Tense तथा Future Perfect Continuous Tense के Passive Verb Forms का प्रयोग सामान्यतया नहीं होता है। इसलिए हम इस पुस्तक में इन चारों Tenses के Passive Verb Forms की चर्चा नहीं करेंगे। इस पुस्तक की पढ़ने के बाद आप Oxford Current English Grammar अवश्य पढ़ें जिसमें इन चारों Tenses के Passive Verb Forms की चर्चा विस्तारपूर्वक की गई है।

4. PAST INDEFINITE TENSE

[ Passive Verb Form: was / were + V^3 ]

**Active**

I ate a mango.
I ate some mangoes.
The police arrested him.
He wrote the letters.
Someone stole my pen.

**Passive**

A mango was eaten by me.
Some mangoes were eaten by me.
He was arrested.
The letters were written by him.
My pen was stolen.

**EXERCISE 66**

*Direction: Put the following into the passive voice –

[ Hint: 9, 11 और 13 के Passive में by + agent देने की जरूरत नहीं है। ]*

1. I helped you.
2. You helped me.
3. He bought a car.
4. She warned him.
5. I ate mangoes.
6. They won the match.
7. She taught the boys.
8. I broke the glass.
9. The police caught the thief.
10. He finished the work soon.
11. The robbers robbed him.
12. The fire damaged the building.
13. They looted the house.
14. She challenged me.
15. She made it.
16. I invited both of them.
17. I made several mistakes.
18. She found the lost bag.
19. I cleaned the cars.
20. I posted all the letters.

Solved Examples:

1. Active A girl saved my life.
   Passive My life was saved by a girl.

2. Active They admired him for his bravery.
   Passive He was admired for his bravery.

3. Active Most of them opposed me.
   Passive I was opposed by most of them.

EXERCISE 67

Direction: Turn the following into the passive—

[Hint: 1, 3, 4, 5, 9, 12 और 15 में by + agent देने की जरूरत नहीं है।]

1. The doctor examined the patient.
2. Shakespeare wrote "As you like it."
3. They admired him for his courage.
4. They looted the house yesterday.
5. They found him guilty of murder.
6. The Indians won the match.
7. Most people opposed this.
8. The farmer saved the snake's life.
9. The police arrested some thieves last night.
10. Tigers attacked the travellers.
11. A boy of ten saved my life.
12. They warned me again and again.
13. Most of our men opposed this.
14. No one loved me.
15. Someone stole my purse in the train.
5. PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE

[ Passive Verb Form: was / were + being + V^3 ]

**Active**
- He was eating a mango.
- He was watching them.
- She was vexing me.
- They were killing animals.
- She was supporting me.

**Passive**
- A mango was being eaten by him.
- They were being watched by him.
- I was being vexed by her.
- Animals were being killed.
- I was being supported by her.

**EXERCISE 68**

*Direction: Turn the following into the passive voice —*

[ Hint: नीचे दिए गए 17 वाक्यों में 7 ऐसे वाक्य हैं जिनके Passive में by + agent देने की जरूरत नहीं है। ]

1. He was helping me.
2. He was helping them.
3. I was writing a letter.
4. She was teaching the student.
5. She was teaching the students.
6. I was solving the problem.
7. The students were answering the question.
8. My father was teaching my brother and sister.
9. They were killing the birds for nothing.
10. The doctor was examining the patients.
11. The girl was drawing the picture.
12. They were repairing the bridge.
13. They were discussing the matter.
14. They were taking him to hospital.
15. My brother was watching the match.
16. We were expecting good news.
17. They were playing the match.

6. PAST PERFECT TENSE

[ Passive Verb Form: had been + V^3 ]

**Active**
- I had done the work.
- She had written the letter.
- She had informed us.

**Passive**
- The work had been done by me.
- The letter had been written by her.
- We had been informed by her.
Somebody had stolen my pen. My pen had been stolen.
Ram had completed the work. The work had been completed
by Ram.

EXERCISE 69

Direction: Turn the following into the passive —
[ Hint: इन 20 वाक्यों में 12 ऐसे वाक्य हैं, जिनके Passive में by + agent देने की जरूरत नहीं है।]

1. I had painted the wall.
2. She had informed me.
3. They had already cheated us. (had already been)
4. He had done the work.
5. She had taught the student.
6. He had sold his horses.
7. The robbers had robbed the villagers.
8. Somebody had already told him.
9. They had arranged everything.
10. The fire had burnt my house to ashes.
11. Somebody had told him the news.
12. The doctor had examined me.
13. He had informed me.
14. He had broken his leg.
15. She had posted all the letters.
16. Nobody had done anything. (had not been)
17. The doctor had examined the patient.
18. The boys had collected the books.
19. They had informed the police of the accident.
20. Somebody had stolen his bicycle.

7. SIMPLE FUTURE TENSE

[ Passive Verb Form: shall / will + be + V3 ]

Active
I shall help you.
She will teach you.
He will help me.
People will forget it.
No one will solve your problem.
They will start the show in two months.

Passive
You will be helped by me.
You will be taught by her.
I shall be helped by him.
It will be forgotten.
Your problem will not be solved.
The show will be started in two months.
EXERCISE 70

Direction: Turn the following into the passive voice —

[इन 20 वाक्यों में 10 ऐसे वाक्य हैं, जिनके Passive में by + agent देने की जरूरत नहीं है।]

1. He will do this.
2. She will help me.
3. You will help us.
4. The boy will take it.
5. She will cheat you.
6. They will support me.
7. I shall solve the problem.
8. The police will arrest the thief.
9. We shall welcome him.
10. People will remember him.
11. Nobody will play the match. (will not be)
12. Somebody will beat you one day. (You ...... one day.)
13. I shall never forget those happy days. (will never be)
14. Everyone will blame you.
15. They will build the road by March. (...... by March.)
16. We shall win the match.
17. We shall follow him.
18. They will not neglect us.
19. They will publish two books in June. (...... in June.)
20. We shall discuss the matter tomorrow.
   (The matter ...... tomorrow.)

8. FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

[Passive Verb Form: shall/will + have been + V3]

1. Active I shall have written the book.
   Passive The book will have been written by me.
2. Active They will have informed us.
   Passive We shall have been informed.
3. Active They will have done the work by next Monday.
   Passive The work will have been done by next Monday.

EXERCISE 71

Direction: Turn the following into the passive —

[Hint: 3, 11, 14 और 15 में by + agent देने की जरूरत नहीं है।]

1. I shall have taught him.
2. She will have completed the work.
3. The police will have arrested the thief.
4. We shall have bought the books.
5. They will have solved the problem.
6. She will have cheated you.
7. He will have informed me.
8. They will have killed the tiger.
9. My father will have bought a car.
10. The children will have eaten the cakes.
11. The robbers will have robbed him.
12. I shall have proved it.
13. They will have cheated our friends.
14. They will have discussed the matter.
15. They will have built the road by March.

9. MODAL VERBS: PASSIVE VERB FORM

shall, will, can, could, may, might, should, would, must, ought, इलावती Modal Auxiliaries हैं | जब इनके बाद Transitive Verb प्रयुक्त रहता है, तब हम Verb को Passive में बदलने के लिए निम्नलिखित form का प्रयोग करते हैं —

modal auxiliary + be + V3

Active
They will kill the tiger.
I can lift it.
They could solve the problem.
He may defeat you.
You must help your brother.
One should keep one’s promises.
He could kill the lion.
We should help the poor.
None can challenge him.
Everyone will blame us.
We must help the poor.
You must write the answers in ink.

Passive
The tiger will be killed (by them).
It can be lifted by me.
The problem could be solved.
You may be defeated by him.
Your brother must be helped.
Promises should be kept.
The lion could be killed by him.
The poor should be helped.
He cannot be challenged.
We shall be blamed by everyone.
The poor must be helped.
The answers must be written in ink.

EXERCISE 72

Direction: Turn the following into the passive —

1. You can do it.
2. I can kill a tiger.
3. He can win the match.
4. She can defeat him.
5. He may do this.
6. He could beat him.
7. I could help you.
8. He might solve it.
9. They may defeat us.
10. You must help the poor.
11. You must send a reply.
12. You should do this.
13. They should finish this work.
14. I should do it.
15. She could buy a car.
16. He would do it.
17. I could solve the problem.
18. Your friend will blame you.
19. She will break it.
20. One can solve it.

10. अगर Verb Phrase की बनावट am/is/are/was/were/have/ has/had + infinitive (to + verb) हो, तो इसका Passive Voice में रूप होगा —

am/is/are/was/were/have/has/had + to be + V3

**Active**
I am to do it.
I was to do it.
I had to do it.
My father is to buy a car.
The teacher was to teach us.
They had to build the bridge.

**Passive**
It is to be done by me.
It was to be done by me.
It had to be done by me.
A car is to be bought by my father.
We were to be taught by the teacher.
The bridge had to be built.

**EXERCISE 73**

*Direction: Turn the following into the passive —*

[Hint: 5, 6, 9, 12, 13, 14 और 20 में by + agent का प्रयोग नहीं करें।]

1. My father is to buy a car.
2. I am to teach him.
3. He is to teach me.
4. He was to invite me.
5. They were to build a bridge here.
6. She was to sell her cows.
7. I have to prove it.
8. She has to guide me.
9. He had to examine the patient.
10. The postman has to deliver the letters.
11. I was to help those poor boys.
12. We have to serve the country.
13. We had to inform the police of the accident.
14. They had to build the bridge.
15. Ram has to solve the problem.
16. The manager has to appoint him.
17. I am to buy some books.
18. She was to defeat the enemies.
19. The boys of this school are to plant some trees.
20. They are to play the match today.

11. IMPERATIVE SENTENCES EXPRESSING ORDER / COMMAND

When Imperative Sentence से order/command का बोध होता है, 
तब हम प्रयुक्त Active Verb को Passive में बदलने के लिए वाक्य को Let 
से शुरू करते हैं और Subject के बाद be + V³ का प्रयोग करते हैं। जैसे—

Active
- Do this work.
- Bring a glass of water.
- Open the door.
- Switch on the radio.
- Don’t pluck the flowers.
- Don’t touch this wire.
- Give the order.
- Inform the police of the accident.

Passive
- Let this work be done.
- Let a glass of water be brought.
- Let the door be opened.
- Let the radio be switched on.
- Let the flowers not be plucked.
- Let this wire not be touched.
- Let the order be given.
- Let the police be informed of the accident.

12. IMPERATIVE SENTENCES EXPRESSING ADVICE

When Imperative Sentence से advice (सलाह) का भाव व्यक्त होता 
है, तब हम Passive form को Let से शुरू नहीं करते हैं, बल्कि वाक्य को 
इस रूप में परिवर्तित करते हैं —

Subject + should + be + V³.

Active
- Love your country.
- Help the poor.
- Help your neighbours.
- Don’t insult the weak.

Passive
- Your country should be loved.
- The poor should be helped.
- Your neighbours should be helped.
- The weak should not be insulted.

Note: कुछ Sentences ऐसे होते हैं जिनसे यह स्पष्ट नहीं होता है कि ये order 
हैं या advice. ऐसे sentences को Rule No. 11 या Rule No. 12 से बनाएँ।
13. यदि Imperative Sentence के साथ Please / Kindly का प्रयोग हो, तो Passive Verb Form के लिए वाक्य की You are requested to से शुरू करें। Please/Kindly का लोप कर शेष भाग को You are requested to के बाद जोड़ दें। जैसे—

**Active**
Kindly post the letter.
Take your chair, please.

**Passive**
You are requested to post the letter.
You are requested to take your chair.

14. यदि Imperative Sentence Transitive Verb से शुरू हो, तो Sentence को Passive Construction देने के लिए You are ordered/You are advised का प्रयोग करें। जैसे—

**Active**
Stand up.
Go there.
Work hard.

**Passive**
You are ordered to stand up.
You are ordered to go there.
You are advised to work hard.

**EXERCISE 74**

*Direction: Turn the following into the passive—*

**[A]**

**Active**
Open the door.

**Passive**
Let the door be opened.

1. Inform the police.
2. Post the letters.
3. Bring a glass of water.
4. Do this work.
5. Switch off the light.
6. Don’t close the gate.
7. Read this book.
8. Shut all the doors.
9. Close the gate.
10. Don’t touch the wire.

**[B]**

**Active**
Help your friends.

**Passive**
Your friends should be helped.

1. Help the poor.
2. Help the poor students.
3. Respect your elders.
4. Love your country.
5. Love your neighbours.
6. Don’t hate the poor.
7. Don’t cheat your friend.
8. Honour the brave.

[C]
Active Kindly help me.
Passive You are requested to help me.

1. Please take your seat.
2. Kindly give me money.
3. Kindly give me some food.
4. Please sit down.
5. Please go out.
6. Please enter by this gate.
7. Please do me a favour.
8. Take your chair, please.

[D]
Active Do.
Passive You are ordered to do.

1. Go there.
2. Stand up.
3. Come tomorrow.
5. Sit down.
7. Go to market.
8. Go to bed.

15. अगर Active Verb के साथ preposition या adverb प्रयुक्त रहता है, तब अभीष्ट verb को Passive बनाते समय प्रयुक्त preposition/adverb का लोप नहीं किया जाता है। जैसे—

**Active**
He looks after me.
They will look after you well.
All his friends laugh at him.
We must listen to our elders.
They objected to his proposal.
We must write to him.
The thief broke into the house. The house was broken into.

**Passive**
I am looked after by him.
You will be well looked after.
He is laughed at by all his friends.
Our elders must be listened to.
His proposal was objected to.
He must be written to.

16. कुछ Passive Verbs के साथ by का प्रयोग नहीं होता है। agent के पहले by के बदले अन्य उपयुक्त preposition का प्रयोग करना पड़ता है, जिसका चयन अभीष्ट verb पर निर्भर करता है। जैसे—

**Active**
I know it.

**Passive**
It is known to me.
He satisfied me.  I was satisfied with him.
The result surprised me.  I was surprised at the result.
His behaviour shocked me.  I was shocked at his behaviour.
He pleased me.  I was pleased with him.
The book has interested me very much.  I have been very much interested in this book.

17. VERBS WITH TWO OBJECTS

कुछ बाक्यों में Active Verb के बाद दो Objects आते हैं। जैसे — I gave him a book. यहाँ gave के बाद दो Objects आए हैं — him और book. इनमें से him Personal/Indirect Object है और book Direct Object है। ऐसे दो Objects वाले Verb को Passive में बदलते समय हम किसी भी Object को Subject बना सकते हैं। परंतु Personal Object/Indirect Object को Subject बनाना अच्छा माना जाता है। लेकिन अगर हमें Direct Object पर ही विशेष जोर देना हो, तो Direct Object को ही Subject बनाकर Active Verb को Passive में बदलना चाहिए। अन्य परिवर्तन सामान्य नियम के ही अनुसार होते हैं। जैसे—

Active                                Passive
1. I gave him a book.                 (a) He was given a book by me.
   (b) A book was given (to) him by me.
2. He told me a story.                (a) I was told a story (by him).
   (b) A story was told me (by him).
3. I offered him a chair.             (a) He was offered a chair by me.
   (b) A chair was offered him by me.
4. The Principal has given me a prize.
   (a) I have been given a prize by the Principal.
   (b) A prize has been given me by the Principal.

EXERCISE 75

Direction: Turn the following into the passive —

[ Hint: 3, 4, 5, 7 और 9 में by + agent देने की जरूरत नहीं है।]

BASED ON RULE NO. 15

1. They are laughing at her.
2. He looks after me.
3. The police are searching for him.
4. They will look into the matter.
5. The police enquired into the case.
6. All his friends laugh at him.
7. We must listen to the elders.
8. Put off the light.
9. They have given up the idea.
10. I must write to him.

**BASED ON RULE NO. 16**

11. She knows me.
12. I satisfied everybody.
13. Your story has interested me.
14. His behaviour shocked me.
15. Seven days make a week.
16. The news pleased me.

**BASED ON RULE NO. 17**

17. Ram gave me a present.
18. He teaches us English.
19. He promised me a prize.
20. The king gave him a reward.
21. We can give you a chance.
22. My brother will give you a book.
23. He handed me a bottle.
24. My father bought me a bicycle.
25. She gave me some food.

18. **सिर्फ Transitive Verbs के ही Passive Voice होते हैं। अतः इन वाक्यों की क्रियाएँ Passive Voice में नहीं हैं —**

- He is gone.  
- He is come.

परंतु इन वाक्यों की क्रियाएँ Passive Voice में हैं —

- They are arrived.
- Winter is come.

**परंतु इन वाक्यों की क्रियाएँ Passive Voice में हैं —**

- The chair is broken.
- He is beaten.

इसलिए उन वाक्यों के Verbs को Passive Voice में नहीं बदला जा सकता है, जो Intransitive हैं। जैसे —

- I read.
- I am going to school.
- He has gone to Patna.
- They are good boys.
- She is laughing.

**MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISE 76**

*Direction: Put the following into the passive —*

1. We respect him.
2. People speak Hindi in Bihar.
3. They are repairing the road.
4. You have made several mistakes.
5. The doctor is examining the patient.
6. Someone stole my pen.
7. They looted the house yesterday.
8. They were cutting the old trees.
9. The children had eaten the cakes.
10. The police arrested some thieves last night.
11. We shall discuss the matter tomorrow.
12. People will remember him.
13. He will have completed the work.
14. I can solve the problem.
15. She could help him.
16. She may defeat you.
17. They might win the game.
18. We should help the poor.
19. He would inform us.
20. You must support him.

**MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISE 77**

*Direction: Turn the following into the passive –*

1. I am to write a letter.
2. She is to teach my daughter.
3. They are to support me.
4. She was to invite me.
5. They were to cut the old trees.
6. We have to buy some books.
7. She has to complete the work.
8. They had to inform the police.
9. Bring a cup of tea.
10. Open the door.
11. Help your neighbours.
12. Kindly post the letters.
13. Go out of the room.
14. My mother looks after me.
15. You must write to her.
17. He pleased me.
18. She gave me an apple.
19. She told him a story.
20. My father bought me a watch.
26. Direct and Indirect Speech

**Direct Speech:** जब किसी वक्ता के कथन को उसी के शब्दों में व्यक्त किया जाता है, तब वह Direct Speech कहलाता है। Direct Speech में प्रायः किसी का कथन inverted commas के बीच में रहता है।

**Indirect Speech:** जब किसी वक्ता के कथन को उसी के शब्दों में न कहकर उसके आशय या सारांश को अपने शब्दों में व्यक्त किया जाता है, तब वह Indirect Speech कहलाता है। Indirect Speech को inverted commas के भीतर नहीं रखा जाता है।

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direct Speech</th>
<th>Indirect Speech</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He said, “I am ill.”</td>
<td>He said that he was ill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ram said, “I am ready.”</td>
<td>Ram said that he was ready.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mohan said, “I saw her.”</td>
<td>Mohan said that he had seen her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He said to me, “Do you know?”</td>
<td>He asked me if I knew.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**कुछ पारिभाषिक शब्दों की व्याख्या**

Direct Speech को Indirect Speech में परिवर्तित किया जा सकता है। इसके कुछ नियम हैं, जिन्हें समझने के पहले कुछ पारिभाषिक शब्दों को समझना चाहिए।

1. **Reporting Verb:** Inverted Commas के बाहर एक वाक्य रहता है, जिसके Verb को Reporting Verb कहते हैं। He said, “I am ready.” यहाँ ‘said’ Reporting Verb है।

2. **Reported Speech:** Inverted Commas के भीतर जो वाक्य रहता है, उसे Reported Speech कहते हैं। He said, “I am ready.” यहाँ ‘I am ready’ Reported Speech है।

3. **Verb of the Reported Speech:** Inverted Commas के भीतर जो वाक्य रहता है, उसे Reported Speech कहते हैं और उसमें प्रयुक्त Verb की Verb of the Reported Speech कहते हैं। He said, “I am ready.” यहाँ ‘am’ Verb of the Reported Speech है।

**Changing into Indirect Speech**

Direct Speech को Indirect Speech में बदलने के लिए कुछ General Rules हैं और कुछ Special Rules। General Rules उन नियमों को कहते हैं जो प्रयुक्त प्रकार के वाक्य के साथ लागू होते हैं, यहाँ Special Rules विभिन्न प्रकार के वाक्यों के लिए भिन्न-भिन्न होते हैं। General Rules को हम तीन मार्गों में इस प्रकार बौद्धिक सकते हैं —
1. Change of Person
2. Change of Tense
3. Change of other Parts of Speech

1. Change of Person

Direct Speech की Indirect Speech में बदलने के लिए Reported Speech में प्रयुक्त Pronouns को इस प्रकार परिवर्तित करते हैं —

1. First Person को Reporting Verb के Subject के अनुसार
2. Second Person को Reporting Verb के Object के अनुसार
3. Third Person को No change.

इसके लिए इस सूत्र को याद रखें —

```
1 2 3
S O N
```

1 का अर्थ है First Person  S का अर्थ है Subject
2 का अर्थ है Second Person  O का अर्थ है Object
3 का अर्थ है Third Person   N का अर्थ है No change

अर्थात् First Person Subject के अनुसार
Second Person Object के अनुसार
Third Person No change

Note: 1. जब Reporting Verb Present या Future Tense में रहता है, तब Indirect Speech में कहीं भी Tense में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। हम यहाँ Reporting Verb को Present/Future Tense में रखेंगे ताकि Tense परिवर्तन की समस्या उत्पन्न न हो और Change of Person की प्रक्रिया भी ठीक से स्पष्ट हो सके।

2. जब Inverted Commas के भीतर Assertive Sentence रहता है, तब Indirect Speech में Inverted Commas के बदले that का प्रयोग होता है।

3. जब Reporting Verb say/says/said रहे और उसके बाद object रहे तो आप यहाँ इसे Indirect Speech में tell/tells/told में बदल दें। अगर Object न रहे तो Reporting Verb में परिवर्तन नहीं करें।

4. Person बदलते समय Number तथा Case पर विशेष ध्यान दें, क्योंकि ये नहीं बदलते हैं। आपकी सुविधा के लिए Personal Pronouns के सभी forms को आगे तालिका में दिया जा रहा है, जिसे हमेशा ध्यान में रखें।

5. इस Chapter में बहुत सारे solved examples दिए गए हैं। उन्हें आप अच्छी तरह पढ़े और समझें। जब आप उन्हें अच्छी तरह समझ जाएंगे, तब आपको exercises बनाने में कठिनाई नहीं होगी। इसलिए इस chapter में दिए गए सभी solved examples को कम-से-कम दो बार अवश्य पढ़े और लिखें।
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Nominative Case</th>
<th>Possessive Case</th>
<th>Objective Case</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>possessive adjective</td>
<td>possessive pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st Person</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>my</td>
<td>mine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we</td>
<td>our</td>
<td>ours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd Person</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd Person</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>she</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>hers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>it</td>
<td>its</td>
<td>×</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they</td>
<td>their</td>
<td>theirs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Solved Examples:**

1. He says to me, “I am your friend.”
   
   Subject Object First Person Second Person
   He tells me that he is my friend.

2. He says to me, “You are my friend.”
   
   Subject Object Second Person First Person
   He tells me that I am his friend.

3. She says to me, “I love you.”
   
   Subject Object First Person Second Person
   She tells me that she loves me.

4. I say to her, “I love you.”
   
   Subject Object First Person Second Person
   I tell her that I love her.

5. She says to me, “I am his sister.”
   
   Subject Object First Person Third Person
   She tells me that she is his sister.

6. Ram says to me, “I am your friend.”
   Ram tells me that he is my friend.

7. Sita says to me, “I am your friend.”
   Sita tells me that she is my friend.

8. Ram says to Sita, “I am your friend.”
   Ram tells Sita that he is her friend.
9. Sita says to Ram, "I am your friend."
   Sita tells Ram that she is his friend.
10. They say to me, "We help you."
    They tell me that they help me.
11. I say to them, "I help you."
    I tell them that I help them.
12. You always say to me, "I shall help you."
    You always tell me that you will help me.
13. The boys say to the teacher, "We need your help."
    The boys tell the teacher that they need his help.
14. We say to him, "We are your helpers."
    We tell him that we are his helpers.
15. The teacher says to the students, "I am ready to help you."
    The teacher tells the students that he is ready to help them.
16. He says to Sita, "I love you and your dog."
    He tells Sita that he loves her and her dog.
17. Geeta says to Ravi, "If you help me I shall help you."
    Geeta tells Ravi that if he helps her she will help him.
18. He says to her, "Yours is black but mine is white."
    He tells her that hers is black but his is white.
19. The boys say to the teacher, "We can't do without your help."
    The boys tell the teacher that they can't do without his help.
20. He says, "I should help myself."
    He says that he should help himself.
21. Ram will say, "I am ready to do my duty."
    Ram will say that he is ready to do his duty.
22. Sita will say to me, "I am ready to help you."
    Sita will tell me that she is ready to help me.
23. The boys say to me, "We must help you and your father."
    The boys tell me that they must help me and my father.
24. I will say to her, "I love you and you love me."
    I will tell her that I love her and she loves me.
25. He says to me, "I did not cheat you, so you should believe me."
    He tells me that he did not cheat me, so I should believe him.

**EXERCISE 78**

*Direction: Change the following into indirect speech—*

1. He says, "I am reading my book."
2. She says, "I am reading my book."
3. You say, "I am reading my book."
4. We say, “We are reading our books.”
5. They say, “We are reading our books.”
7. Ram says to me, “I am your friend.”
8. Sita says to me, “I am your friend.”
9. He says to Sita, “I am your friend.”
10. Sita says to him, “I am your friend.”
11. I say to Ram, “I know you.”
12. I say to the boys, “I know you.”
13. The boy says to me, “I know you.”
14. The boys say to me, “We know you.”
15. They say to me, “We shall help you.”
16. I say to her, “I can teach you.”
17. The child says to his mother, “I love you.”
18. He says to me, “I am ready to help you.”
19. I say to Mohan, “You are my best friend.”
20. Mohan will say to Reeta, “I don’t need your help.”
21. She will say to me, “Your brother helps me.”
22. I say to your brother, “I am your friend.”
23. Monu says to Leela, “You should help me.”
24. Leela says to Monu, “I shall help you.”
25. He says to me, “I love you and your dog.”

EXERCISE 79

Direction: Change the following into indirect speech —

1. Amar says to Ratan, “I am your friend and you are my friend.”
2. She says to Ram, “If you help me I shall help you.”
3. They say to me, “We help you because you help us.”
4. She says to me, “I know you but you don’t know me.”
5. The students say to the teacher, “We can’t do without your help.”
6. He says to my mother, “You should help me because I am your son’s friend.”
7. She will say to us, “I shall help you if you help me.”
8. She says to Ram, “I know you and your brothers because you are my neighbours.”
9. Ram says to her, “I know you and your friends because they are my neighbours.”
10. She says to me, “I have given you my life, but you have given me only tears, and so I am not going to believe you.”
11. He says to me, “I was reading while you were playing with your friends.”
12. We will say to him, "We wanted to help you but we could not help you because we were absent."
13. The farmers say to me, "We never quarrel with them."
14. She says to me, "This is mine and that is yours."
15. I say to you, "You can do me no harm because I am stronger than you."
16. You say to me, "You can do me no harm because I am stronger than you."
17. Sita says to Ravi, "You can do me no harm because I am stronger than you."
18. Ravi says to Radha, "I have been helping you."
19. Mohan says to Geeta, "You have been very kind to me, so I shall help you when you need my help."
20. Geeta says to Mohan, "You have been very kind to me, so I shall help you when you need my help."

2. Change of Tense

1. जब Reporting Verb Present/Future Tense में रहता है, तब Indirect Speech में कहीं भी Tense में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। अभी तक दिए गए उदाहरणों से यह पूर्णतः स्पष्ट है।

2. जब Reporting Verb Past Tense में रहता है, तब Inverted Commas के भीतर प्रयुक्त Tense में परिवर्तन होता है। यह परिवर्तन इस प्रकार होता है—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direct</th>
<th>Indirect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Simple Present</td>
<td>⇒ Simple Past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Continuous</td>
<td>⇒ Past Continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>⇒ Past Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect Continuous</td>
<td>⇒ Past Perfect Continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple Past</td>
<td>⇒ Past Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Continuous</td>
<td>⇒ Past Perfect Continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>⇒ no change of tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect Continuous</td>
<td>⇒ no change of tense</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

shall/will             ⇒ should/would
can                   ⇒ could
may                   ⇒ might
am/is/are             ⇒ was/were
have/has              ⇒ had
was/were              ⇒ had been
had to + V₁            ⇒ had had to + V₁
could/should/would/might ⇒ generally no change
Solved Examples:

1. He said to me, “I am your friend.”
   He told me that he was my friend.

2. She said to me, “I am to help you.”
   She told me that she was to help me.

3. Sita said to me, “I love you.”
   Sita told me that she loved me.

4. My son said to me, “I am doing my lesson.”
   My son told me that he was doing his lesson.

5. Geeta said to Ram, “I have always helped you.”
   Geeta told Ram that she had always helped him.

6. Ram said to Rita, “I have been waiting for you.”
   Ram told Rita that he had been waiting for her.

7. My father said to me, “I wanted to give you a bicycle.”
   My father told me that he had wanted to give me a bicycle.

8. He said to the boys, “I was playing with you.”
   He told the boys that he had been playing with them.

9. Radha said to Ram, “I had seen him.”
   Radha told Ram that she had seen him.

10. He said, “I had been playing.”
    He said that he had been playing.

11. He said to me, “I shall help you.”
    He told me that he would help me.

12. He said to me, “I can help you.”
    He told me that he could help me.

13. He said to me, “He may help me.”
    He told me that he might help him.

14. He said, “I could kill the bird.”
    He said that he could kill the bird.

15. He said, “I was absent.”
    He said that he had been absent.

16. He said to her, “I was busy, so I did not help you.”
    He told her that he had been busy, so he hadn’t helped her.

EXERCISE 80

Direction: Change the following into indirect speech —

1. He said to me, “I am your friend.”
2. She said to me, “I am to help you.”
3. They said to her, “We want to help you.”
4. She said to her sister, “I have sympathy for you.”
5. The boy said to mother, “I am going to my friend.”
6. He said to the girl, “I have always helped you.”
7. You said to her, “I have not beaten your dog.”
8. He said to me, “I have been waiting for you for two hours.”
9. He said to them, “I can help you.”
10. She said to me, “I should not vex you.”
11. Mohan said to Reeta, “I love you.”
12. I said to them, “I have love for you.”
13. He said to her, “I help you because you are a good girl.”
14. He said to me, “I can help you if you don’t harm me.”
15. He said, “I have everything that I need.”
16. She said to him, “I shall be your guide.”
17. I said to her, “If you help me I shall help you.”
18. He said to me, “Your brother is playing with my brother.”
19. Ram said to his sister, “I have come to help you, so you should not be afraid of anything.”
20. He said to the farmer, “I have been serving you for years but you have never cared for me.”

**EXERCISE 81**

**Direction:** Change the following into indirect speech —

1. He said, “I ate two mangoes.”
2. She said to me, “You helped me.”
3. He said to her, “I wanted to help you.”
4. He said, “I was absent.”
5. Ram said to me, “I was your friend.”
6. The boy said, “I was playing in the field.”
7. Gopal said to her, “I was going to you.”
8. The child said to her mother, “I was playing with my friends.”
9. They said to me, “We were your friends.”
10. He said, “I had finished the work.”
11. Ram said to me, “I had informed you.”
12. He said to me, “I had been waiting for you.”
13. They said, “We had been doing for years.”
14. They said to the girls, “You danced well.”
15. My mother said to my brothers, “I was making tea for you.”
16. He said to me, “I was busy, so I did not help you.”
17. He said, “I could pass the examination.”
18. She said, “It might be dangerous.”
19. The boys said to me, “We did not understand the lesson.”
20. He said to me, “You should help me but I know that you will not help me because I never helped you.”
Exception: Universal Truth

यदि Inverted Commas के भीतर कोई ऐसा कथन हो जिससे विरंतन सत्य या सिद्धांत (Universal Truth) का बोध हो, तो Reporting Verb के Past Tense में रहने पर भी Reported Speech के Tense में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होगा। जैसे —

1. He said, "The earth is round."
   He said that the earth is round.
2. My father said to me, "Honesty is the best policy."
   My father told me that honesty is the best policy.
3. He said, "Work is worship."
   He said that work is worship.
4. The teacher said, "The sun rises in the east and sets in the west."
   The teacher said that the sun rises in the east and sets in the west.
5. He remarked, "A bad carpenter quarrels with his tools."
   He remarked that a bad carpenter quarrels with his tools.
6. He says, "Two and two is four."
   He says that two and two is four.

EXERCISE 82

Direction: Change the following into indirect speech —

1. He said, "The earth moves round the sun."
2. The priest said, "Man is mortal."
3. He said, "I had won the prize."
4. She said to me, "I had been playing with you."
5. He said, "I get up early in the morning."
6. My son said to me, "I have done my lesson, so I am playing."
7. He said to me, "I did not love you at all."
8. The teacher said, "Labour never goes in vain."
9. The mother said, "My child is my love."
10. He said, "Sympathy is greater than gold."
11. My father said, "Work is worship."
12. He says to me, "You never helped me, so I will not help you."
13. He said to me, "Time and tide wait for no man."
14. She will say to me, "You have cheated me."
15. She will say, "I could find her."
16. He said to me, “I know what you did.”
17. I said, “Iron is more useful than gold.”
18. They said, “We can’t live without water.”
19. He said to me, “I was teaching your son.”
20. He said to her, “I had been teaching your son.”

**Change of Other Parts of Speech**

जब Reporting Verb Past Tense में रहता है, तब Reported Speech में जितने भी निकटता-सूचक शब्द रहते हैं, वे सब के सब Indirect Speech में दूरी-सूचक शब्दों में बदल जाते हैं। ऐसे आवश्यक परिवर्तन के लिए इस Chart को ध्यान में रखें—

**Direct**
- this
- these
- here
- hence
- now
- thus
- today
- yesterday
- the day before yesterday
- tomorrow
- the day after tomorrow
- next week/year, etc
- last week/year, etc
- a year ago

**Indirect**
- that
- those
- there
- thence
- then
- so
- that day
- the day before/the previous day
- two days before
- the next day/the following day
- in two days’ time
- the following week/year, etc
- the previous week/year, etc
- a year before/the previous year

**Solved Examples:**

1. He said, “I am busy today.”
   He said that he was busy that day.

2. She said, “I shall do it tomorrow.”
   She said that she would do it the next day.

3. He said, “I don’t like this boy.”
   He said that he did not like that boy.

4. He said, “I am now speaking to this boy.”
   He said that he was then speaking to that boy.

5. They said, “We are starting the day after tomorrow.”
   They said that they were starting in two days’ time.

6. He said, “She died a year ago.”
   He said that she had died a year before.
Note: चूंकि घटना past time से संबंधित रहती है, इसलिए निकटता-सूचक शब्दों को दूरी-सूचक शब्दों में बदलना पड़ता है। यदि Reported Speech में प्रयुक्त वस्तु/परिस्थिति वक्ता के साथ अभी भी मौजूद हो, तो उसे हालत में निकटता-सूचक शब्दों को दूरी-सूचक शब्दों में नहीं बदला जाएगा। जैसे —

1. He said, “This is my table.”
   अगर टेबल Reporter के सामने बोलने के समय भी मौजूद हो, तो Indirect Speech में this को that में नहीं बदला जाएगा। अर्थात्
   He said that this was his table.

2. This morning Ram said to me, “I shall give you money today.”
   This morning Ram told me that he would give me money today.
   यहाँ this morning से यह स्पष्ट है कि दिन नहीं बदला है। अतः today का that day नहीं होगा।

**EXERCISE 83**

*Direction: Change the following into indirect speech —*

1. He said, “I am going to Patna today.”
2. She said to me, “I shall stay here with you.”
3. He said, “I shall do it tomorrow.”
4. She said, “My father came yesterday.”
5. They said to her, “We shall see you tomorrow.”
6. He said, “The sky is cloudy now.”
7. He said, “I did not break these plates.”
8. My boss said to me, “You can take this away with you.”
10. She said, “I am now opening this box.”
11. She said, “I will dance tomorrow.”
12. He said, “She arrived yesterday and will go tomorrow.”
13. She said, “I shall join the office next week.”
14. She said, “My husband died a year ago.”
15. He said, “I will come here again tomorrow.”

ध्यान देने योग्य कुछ आवश्यक बातें

1. कभी-कभी Reporting Verb के बाद Object नहीं रहता है और Reported Speech में प्रयुक्त Second Person के pronoun/adjective को बदलने की आवश्यकता पड़ती है। वैसी परिस्थिति में आप अपने मन से कौई भी उपयुक्त object को चुन सकते हैं और उसे Reporting Verb के बाद दे दें। जैसे —
(a) He said, "I am waiting for you."
   He told me that he was waiting for me.
or, He told her that he was waiting for her.

(b) He said, "I do not wish to see any of you."
   He told us that he did not wish to see any of us.
or, He told them that he did not wish to see any of them.

इस प्रकार Object का चयन आपकी इच्छा पर निर्भर करता है। अतः आप जो उपयुक्त समझिए, उसका चयन करें। अगर किसी Passage की Indirect Speech में बदलना हो, तो पूरे Passage के भाव को समझते हुए उपयुक्त Object का चयन करें।

2. यदि Inverted Commas के भीतर संबोधन के रूप में कोई नाम आए, तो उस नाम को Reporting Verb का Object बना दें।

   (a) He said, "Ram, I want to help you."
   He told Ram that he wanted to help him.

   (b) Sita said, "I love you very much, Mohan."
   Sita told Mohan that she loved him very much.

3. यदि Inverted Commas के भीतर O, Well, Okay इत्यादि हों, तो Indirect Speech में इनका लोप कर दें। जैसे —

   He said, "Well, Ram, you can take it."
   He told Ram that he could take it.

4. Reported Speech वाक्य के शुरू में भी रह सकता है या Reporting Verb के बाद में या Reporting Verb की दोनों तरफ, परंतु Indirect Speech में वही पद पहले आएगा जो Inverted Commas के बाहर है, जैसा कि आप करते आ रहे हैं। जैसे —

   (a) "I have completed my job," he said.
   He said that he had completed his job.

   (b) "I am always ready to help you," she said to me, "because you are my neighbour."
   She told me that she was always ready to help me because I was her neighbour.

**EXERCISE 84**

_Direction: Change the following into indirect speech —_

1. He says, "I am your friend and you are my friend."
2. She said, "I was waiting for you."
3. The boys said, "We can’t do without your help."
4. You said, "I will not give this pen to you."
5. "You should help me," said she.
6. "Okay, I will come tomorrow," he said.
7. He said, “Rekha, I love you.”
8. She said, “You should help me, Mohan.”
9. “You can sit here, Mohan,” the teacher said.
10. The boss said, “Well, you can take it now.”
11. “I wrote three letters yesterday,” said she.
12. He said, “Radha, you are my life.”
13. “Everything I have is yours,” she said.
14. “I had completed my job,” he said.
15. He said, “Well, I shall punish you today.”
16. “I shall help you,” she said to me, “if you help me.”
17. “Two and two is four,” said the teacher.
18. “I love you,” the man said to her, “because you have been kind to me.”
19. “You are a good boy,” said the teacher, “so I shall help you.”
20. “You can go now,” the master said to the servant, “because I don’t need you.”

SPECIAL RULES

General Rules जहाँ सभी प्रकार के वाक्यों के साथ लागू होते हैं, वहीं Special Rules विशिष्ट प्रकार के वाक्यों के लिए मिल-मिल होते हैं।

SPECIAL RULES: ASSERTIVE SENTENCES

Inverted Commas के अंदर प्रयुक्त Assertive Sentences को Indirect Speech में परिवर्तित करने के लिए जो भी नियम हैं उनसे आप परिचित हो चुके हैं, क्योंकि अभी तक आपने जिन वाक्यों को Indirect Speech में परिवर्तित किया है वे सभी Assertive Sentences हैं।

आपने देखा है कि Inverted Commas को that में बदल दिया जाता है। Reporting Verb ‘say’ को tell + object में बदल दिया जाता है अगर say के बाद to + object हो। यदि to + object का प्रयोग न हो तो say को ज्यों-क्यों छोड़ दिया जाता है। आप चाहें तो say + to + object को tell + object में नहीं भी बदल सकते हैं, पर बदल देना ज्यादा अच्छा होगा।

SPECIAL RULES: INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES

यदि Inverted Commas के भीतर Interrogative Sentence हो, तो उसे Indirect Speech में बदलने के लिए निम्नलिखित तरीके अपनाएँ—

(a) Reporting Verb को ask में बदल दें।

(b) Inverted Commas के बदले that का प्रयोग नहीं करें। अगर Sentence Question Word (when, what, why, where, who, how, which, how many, how much, etc) से शुरू हो, तो that की जगह पर प्रयुक्त Question Word ही दें।
(c) **Interrogative Sentence** किसी Anomalous Finite (am, is, are, was, were, have, has, do, does, did, can, could, shall, will, etc) से शुरू होने, तो Inverted Commas के बदले if / whether का प्रयोग करें।

(d) **Interrogative Verb Form** को **Assertive Verb Form** में बदल दें और Indirect Speech के जो सामान्य नियम हैं, उन्हें apply कर पूरे वाक्य को Indirect Speech में बदल दें।

**Note:** Interrogative Verb Form को Assertive Verb Form में इस प्रकार बदलें —

1. Do you eat? You eat.
2. Do you not eat? You do not eat.
3. Does he know? He knows.
4. Does he not know? He does not know.
5. Did they go? They went.
6. Did he not go? He did not go.
7. Are you ready? You are ready.
8. Shall we be going? We shall be going.
9. Must he come? He must come.
13. Where are they going? Where they are going.
14. Who are you? Who you are.
15. What is your name? What your name is.
16. Who killed the tiger? Who killed the tiger.
17. Who will come? Who will come.

**Solved Examples:**

1. He says to me, “Are you ill?”
   He asks me if I am ill.

2. He said to me, “Are you ill?”
   He asked me if I was ill.

3. She said to me, “Will you help me?”
   She asked me if I would help her.

4. They said, “Were you present there?”
   They asked me if I had been present there.

5. He said to Sita, “Do you love me?”
   He asked Sita if she loved him.

6. He says to Geeta, “Does your brother help you?”
   He asks Geeta if her brother helps her.
7. We said to her, “Did you know us?”
   We asked her if she had known us.
8. He said to Sita, “Did you not vex me?”
   He asked Sita if she had not vexed him.
9. She said to me, “Were you going to me?”
   She asked me if I had been going to her.

**EXERCISE 85**

*Direction: Change the following into indirect speech —

[A]

1. He says to me, “Are you ready?”
2. He said to me, “Are you ready?”
3. She says to Ram, “Have you time for me?”
4. She said to Ram, “Have you time for me?”
5. Ram says to Leela, “Is your sister coming today?”
6. Ram said to Leela, “Is your sister coming today?”
7. She says to him, “Am I dear to you?”
8. She said to him, “Am I dear to you?”
9. He says to me, “Have you stolen my pen?”
10. He said to me, “Have you stolen my pen?”
11. Mohan says to Sheela, “Were you not my friend?”
12. Mohan said to Sheela, “Were you not my friend?”
13. She says to me, “Was your brother going to market?”
14. She said to me, “Was your brother going to market?”
15. She says to her sister, “Had you done it?”
16. She said to her sister, “Had you done it?”
17. I said to him, “Will you help me?”
18. You said to Reeta, “Can you help me?”
19. She says to me, “Should you cheat me?”
20. He said to me, “Will you not help her?”

[B]

1. He says to me, “Do you love me?”
2. He said to me, “Do you love me?”
3. She says to him, “Do you know me?”
4. She said to him, “Do you know me?”
5. She says to him, “Does he not help you?”
6. She said to him, “Does he not help you?”
7. She says to me, “Did you teach my sister?”
8. She said to me, “Did you teach my sister?”
9. He says to Leela, “Did you not love me?”
10. He said to Leela, “Did you not love me?”
11. He says to her, “Do you not like my sister?”
12. He said to her, “Do you know my father?”
13. He said to her, “Did you not like my sister?”
14. He said to her, “Do you think it may rain today?”
15. She asked me, “Are you sorry for what you did?”
16. He said to me, “Does your mother love me?”
17. He says to her, “Did you not give me your pen?”
18. He said to her, “Did you not give me your pen?”
19. He says to Sita, “Do you think I do not cheat you?”
20. He said to Sita, “Do you think I did not cheat you?”

Solved Examples:

1. He says to me, “Where do you live?”
   He asks me where I live.

2. He said to me, “Where do you live?”
   He asked me where I lived.

3. He said to me, “Why did you abuse me?”
   He asked me why I had abused him.

4. He said to Sita, “Why have you done this?”
   He asked Sita why she had done that.

5. She says to me, “Who are you?”
   She asks me who I am.

6. She said to me, “Who are you?”
   She asked me who I was.

7. He said to me, “Who went to you?”
   He asked me who had gone to me.

8. He said to me, “What is your name?”
   He asked me what my name was.

9. He said, “What was falling?”
   He asked what had been falling.

10. He said to me, “What will you do for me?”
    He asked me what I would do for him.

EXERCISE 86

Direction: Put the following into indirect speech.

[A]

1. He says to me, “What do you eat?”
2. He said to me, “What do you eat?”
3. She says to Ram, “Why do you not help me?”
4. She said to Ram, “Why do you not help me?”
5. He says to Gita, “When did you help me?”
6. He said to Gita, “When did you help me?”
7. Mohan says to the beggar, “Why are you sad?”
8. Mohan said to the beggar, “Why are you sad?”
9. My mother says to me, “When will you go?”
10. My mother said to me, “When will you go?”
11. The son said to his father, “When will you buy me a bicycle?”
12. He said to me, “Why were you absent?”
13. She said to me, “Where have you been working?”
14. He said to me, “Why are you disturbing me?”
15. She said to the king, “What can I do for you?”
16. He said to the boy, “Why have you caught my hen?”
17. Ramu said to his mistress, “Why were you beating me for nothing?”
18. He said to me, “Why had he not completed the job?”
19. She said to the teacher, “How shall I repay you?”
20. I said to the queen, “What have you for me?”

[B]
1. He says to me, “What is your name?”
2. She said to me, “What is your name?”
3. He says, “Who can do this?”
4. He said, “Who can do this?”
5. She said, “How much do you eat?”
6. She said, “Who will help me?”
7. He said to me, “Who has beaten you?”
8. He said to me, “Who wanted to kill you?”
9. She said, “What is this?”
10. He asked, “Which team won the match?”
11. He said, “What happened?”
12. I said to my father, “Who was with you?”
13. He said to me, “Who can defeat me?”
14. She said to me, “What should I do for you?”
15. Ramu said, “Who was calling me?”
16. The farmer said, “How long will it rain?”
17. She said to me, “How many pens have you?”
18. They said to me, “Who is helping you?”
19. She said to him, “What is the problem with you?”
20. The man said to the little girl, “Who are you and what do you want?”

[C]
1. “Where are the students?” asked the teacher.
2. “Do you want to go without me?” the father said to his son.
3. “Who killed your dog?” the man said to me.
4. They said, “Who will save us?”
5. The man said, “Have you written the letter?”
6. The servant said, “The lawyer has come to see you.”
7. He said to me, “Where is your bicycle?”
8. I said to my father, “When did you give me money?”
9. “Why was he going to you?” I said to him.
10. He said, “God is everywhere.”
11. I said, “Mohan, what are you doing today?”
12. He said, “I shall go as soon as it is possible.”
13. “What is this?” said Oberon to Puck.
14. She said to her husband, “What is it that makes you so sad?”
15. He said, “Ravi, when is the next train?”
16. I said to her, “He likes you but I don’t like you.”
17. My father said to me, “I shall buy you a bicycle if you do your homework in time.”
18. He said to her, “Do you know who was teaching me and my brother?”
19. They said to me, “Where were our books?”
20. He said, “God is kind to all of us.”

**IMPERATIVE SENTENCES: INDIRECT SPEECH**

Imperative Sentence से प्रायः order, command, advice या request का बोध होता है। इसे Indirect Speech में बदलने के लिए निम्नलिखित Special Rules की सहायता ले —

(a) Reporting Verb को अर्थ के अनुसार tell/ask/order/command/request/suggest/advise में बदल दें।

(b) Direct Speech में Reporting Verb के बाद Object रहे या न रहे, Indirect Speech में Reporting Verb के बाद Object अवस्था दें।

(c) Reported Speech में भरतक Please, Kindly, आदि शब्दों का लौप करें।

(d) Inverted Commas को to/not to में बदल दें और उसके बाद अभीष्ट Verb का V¹ दें। फिर अन्य पदों को General Rules of Narration के अनुसार दें। अब आप संपूर्ण शक्तियों को नीचे दिए गए उदाहरणों से समझें।

1. He said to me, “Bring a glass of water.”
   He ordered me to bring a glass of water.
2. The doctor said to me, “Walk in the morning.”
   The doctor advised me to walk in the morning.
3. My son said to me, “Please buy me a coat.”
   My son requested me to buy him a coat.
4. He said, “Run.”
   He ordered me to run.
5. She said, “Ram, do as I say.”
   She told/asked/ordered Ram to do as she said.

6. The teacher said, “Show me the work that you have done.”
   The teacher told/asked/ordered the student to show him the work that he (the student) had done.

**EXERCISE 87**

*Direction: Put the following into indirect speech —*

1. She said to me, “Bring a glass of water.”
2. She said to me, “Bring me a glass of water.”
3. He said to me, “Go there.”
4. The old man said to his servant, “Close the door.”
5. He said, “Stand up on the bench.”
6. My mother said to me, “Switch off the T.V.”
7. My son said to me, “Please give me some money.”
8. He said to his wife, “Prepare a cup of tea.”
9. The doctor said to me, “Take the medicine in time.”
10. Mother said to me, “Go to market.”
11. The beggar said to me, “Kindly give me some food.”
12. The teacher said, “Get up early.”
13. The doctor said to me, “Take care of your health.”
14. She said to me, “Have a cup of tea.”
15. The saint said to me, “Believe in God.”
16. He said to her, “Wait for me till I return.”
17. He said to me, “Please remember what I told you.”
18. Mohan said to his brother, “Depend on what I say.”
19. The teacher said, “Work hard if you want to get success.”
20. She said to us, “Do whatever you like.”

**NEGATIVE IMPERATIVES**

यदि Imperative Sentence Don’t में शुरू हो, तो Indirect Speech में to के बदले ‘not to’ दें या Reporting Verb की forbid में बदलें, जैसा कि इन उदाहरणों से स्पष्ट है —

1. He told me, “Don’t shout in the class.”
   He asked me not to shout in the class.
   or, He forbade me to shout in the class.

2. He said, “Don’t make too much noise, children.”
   He asked the children not to make too much noise.
   or, He forbade the children to make too much noise.

   She told me not to drive too fast.
   She forbade me to drive too fast.
Note: ध्यान दें कि forbade के बाद not to का प्रयोग नहीं होकर सिर्फ ‘to’ का प्रयोग हुआ है।

EXERCISE 88

**Direction:** Put the following into indirect speech —

1. My father said to me, “Don’t walk in the sun.”
2. Ram said to his servant, “Do not do this.”
3. He said, “My son, don’t kill the bird.”
4. He said, “Don’t sleep late.”
5. The teacher told us, “Don’t talk in the class.”
6. The doctor said to her, “Don’t drink.”
7. He said, “Don’t ask so many questions.”
8. The beggar said, “Don’t beat me.”
9. The thief said to the judge, “Don’t send me to jail.”
10. He said, “Don’t touch this wire, John.”
12. The student said to the teacher, “Please do not order me to go out of the class.”
13. Ranjan said to his friend, “Do not spoil your health.”
14. She said to me, “Don’t go today.”
15. I said, “Don’t be misguided.”
16. The doctor said to me, “Don’t smoke if you want to improve your health.”
17. The teacher said, “Don’t make a noise when I am in the class.”
18. I said, “Don’t drive fast when the road is busy.”
19. She said to him, “Do not go there if you want to stay here.”
20. I said to my friend, “Don’t be afraid when you are with me.”

EXERCISE 89

**Direction:** Put the following into indirect speech—

1. “Don’t believe everything you hear,” he warned me.
2. “Look before you leap,” he said to her.
3. He said, “Follow her if she leaves the house.”
5. He said, “I had to help you.”
6. He said to me, “I can’t tell you how grateful I am.”
7. She said, “Do you know who is coming?”
8. Amit said to me, “Where did you go yesterday?”
9. She said to her servant, “Do as I tell you.”
10. She said, “The sun never rises in the west.”
12. She said to the maid, “Go and send off this letter.”
13. My mother said, “Do not go against your father.”
14. “Don’t be afraid, my children,” said the host.
15. The gentleman said, “I am free to do what I like with my walking stick.”
16. He said, “Oil and water do not mix.”
17. He asked, “Where is the doctor and what is he doing?”
18. He said, “God is everywhere.”
19. She said to me, “Work is worship.”
20. He said to me, “Please give me your bicycle for a day.”

**OPTATIVE SENTENCE: INDIRECT SPEECH**

Optative Sentence से अभिव्यक्त, आशीर्वाद, प्रार्थना या इच्छा का बोध होता है। इसे Indirect Speech में बदला जा सकता है। इसके लिए पूर्व बताए गए General Rules के अलावा निम्नलिखित Special Rules की सहायता ले—

(a) Reporting Verb को बाक्य के अर्थानुसार curse/bless/pray/wish में बदलें।

(b) Inverted Commas के बदले that दें।

(c) Optative Sentence को Assertive Sentence में बदलें। अर्थात् Subject के बाद Verb दें। फिर Tense, Person तथा अन्य पद का परिवर्तन सामान्य नियम के अनुसार करें।

(d) अंत में full stop दें।

अब आप सम्पूर्ण प्रक्रिया को नीचे दिए गए उदाहरणों से समझें—

1. He said to me, “May you live long!”
   He blessed me that I might live long.

2. My father said to me, “May you get success!”
   My father wished me that I might get success.

3. They said, “May God save the king!”
   They wished/prayed that God might save the king.

4. He said to her, “May you die!”
   He cursed her that she might die.

Note: (a) ऐसे बाक्यों में wish/pray के बाद object न दें।

(b) यदि Optative Sentence में May का प्रयोग नहीं हो, तो उसे बाक्य में जोड़ दें और तब बाक्य को Indirect Speech में बदलें।
5. They said, “Long live our friendship!”
   They wished that their friendship might live long.
6. The saint said, “God bless you!”
   The saint prayed that God might bless me.

EXERCISE 90

Direction: Turn the following into indirect speech —

1. He said to me, “May you get success!”
2. The mother said to her son, “May God bless you!”
3. The woman said, “May you die of cholera!”
4. The priest said to me, “May you be happy!”
5. He said, “May God pardon this sinner!”
6. She said, “May you die!”
7. My father said to me, “May God help you!”
8. The hermit said, “May you be blessed with a son!”
9. We said, “May the soul of Gandhijee get peace in the Heaven!”
10. He said, “May the Prime Minister live long!”
11. He said to me, “May you live long!”
12. He said, “God save the king!”
13. They said, “Long live our friendship!”
14. The people said, “Long live the king!”
15. The woman said to me, “May you die soon!”
16. My friend said, “May you succeed in your examination!”
17. He said, “God save the President!”
18. The workers said, “Long live our unity!”
19. “May God bless the good boy!” said the old lady.
20. The Principal said, “May you get a first class!”

EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES: INDIRECT SPEECH

Exclamatory Sentences से प्रायः हर्ष, विषाद, क्रोध, घृणा, आश्चर्य या प्रशंसा का भाव व्यक्त होता है। इन्हें Indirect Speech में बदला जा सकता है। इसके लिए पूर्व बताए गए General Rules के अलावा निम्नलिखित Special Rules की सहायता हैं:

(a) Reporting Verb को अर्थपूर्ण से खुशी / दुःख / उलझास के लिए exclaim with joy/sorrow/applause में बदल दें।

हर्ष / खुशी / उलझास के लिए— exclaim with joy
दुःख / शोक के लिए— exclaim with sorrow
आश्चर्य / विस्मय के लिए— exclaim with surprise
Exclamatory Sentences को Assertive में बदलना सीखें। इसके लिए कुछ common examples दिए जा रहे हैं, जिन्हें समझें —

1. What a beautiful girl she is!
   She is a very beautiful girl.

2. What a place it is!
   It is a very fine place.

3. What a fool I was!
   I was a big fool.

4. How fast the baby runs!
   The baby runs very fast.

5. What a place! / What a place it is!
   It is a very fine/strange/lonely place.

6. What a fool! / What a fool he is!
   He is a great fool.

7. What a fall!
   It is a big fall.

8. How dark the night is!
   The night is very dark.

9. Nonsense!
   It is nonsense.

10. Oh! Enough!
    It is enough.

Some Solved Examples:

1. He said, “Alas! I am ruined.”
   He exclaimed with sorrow that he was ruined.

2. The boy said, “Alas! My cat is dead.”
   The boy exclaimed with sorrow that his cat was dead.
3. The boys said, “Hurrah! We have won the match.”
   The boys exclaimed with joy that they had won the match.

4. The Headmaster said, “Alas! Mrs Indira Gandhi is no more!”
   The Headmaster exclaimed with sorrow that Mrs Indira Gandhi was no more.

5. He said, “What a beautiful girl she is!”
   He exclaimed with joy that she was a very beautiful girl.

6. She said, “How fast my baby runs!”
   She exclaimed with joy that her baby ran very fast.

7. He said, “What a fool I am!”
   He exclaimed with sorrow/regret that he was a big fool.

8. He said, “What a place!”
   He exclaimed with joy that it was a very fine place.
   or, He exclaimed with surprise that it was a very strange place.

9. He said, “What a fall!”
   He exclaimed with sorrow that it was a big fall.

10. Ram said, “What an idea!”
    Ram exclaimed with joy that it was an extraordinary idea.

11. I said, “Oh! Enough!”
    I exclaimed with disgust that it was enough.

**EXERCISE 91**

*Direction: Put the following into indirect speech —*

1. She said, “Alas! I am ruined.”
2. The girl said, “Alas! My dog is dead.”
3. He said, “Oh! I have cut my finger.”
4. The players said, “Hurrah! We have won the match.”
5. She said, “Bravo! You have done well.”
6. He said, “Hurrah! I have got a prize.”
7. He said, “Ah! I am happy now.”
8. He said, “What a beautiful girl she is!”
9. They said, “What a place it is!”
10. She said, “How fast my baby runs!”
11. He said, “What a fool I am!”
12. They said, “Ah! Our friend has come from America.”
13. They said, “How kind the king is!”
14. He said, “How dark the night is!”
15. She said, "How sweetly she sings!"
16. Sonu said, "What a beautiful sight it is!"
17. He said, "How foolish I was!"
18. They said, "What a fall!"
19. He said, "Oh! Enough!"
20. She said, "What a beautiful flower!"
21. She said, "Nonsense!"
22. The girl said, "What a fine morning!"
23. He said, "How clever I am!"
24. She said, "What a nice film it is!"
25. They said, "How cruel the king is!"

**MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISE 92**

*Direction: Put the following into indirect speech —*

1. He said, "I shall go tomorrow."
2. She said to me, "Will you listen to me?"
3. He said to him, "Please wait here till I return."
4. Sohan said, "How clever I am!"
5. "Who are you and what do you want?" she said.
6. He said, "Have you anything to tell me, Rozy?"
7. She said to me, "What is the name of your brother?"
8. They said, "May the king live long!"
9. I said to him, "Don't move in the sun."
10. She said to the beggar, "How much do you want?"
11. He said to him, "Isn't your name Ravi?"
12. She said to her father, "When will you buy me a frock?"
13. Ram said, "God is Almighty."
14. He said to me, "May you live long!"
15. He said to me, "Why did you laugh at me?"
16. He says to me, "What were you doing with my toy?"
17. The teacher said, "The earth moves round the sun."
18. He said, "What a fine picture!"
19. He says to me, "I shall help you if you help me."
20. He said to them, "I was waiting for you."
21. He said, "I am now speaking to this boy."
22. He said, "It is not so foggy today as it was yesterday."
23. "Okay, I will come again tomorrow," he said.
24. He said to her, "Why did you give up your study?"
25. I said to him, "How can you prove that she loves you?"
26. He said, “What is the problem here?”
27. The teacher said, “Don’t shout when I am in the class.”
28. The doctor said to me, “Take the medicine in time.”
29. He said, “My sons, don’t waste your time.”
30. The leader said, “Long live our unity!”
31. The woman said, “May you die of cholera!”
32. He said to me, “I wanted to help you but I am not going to help you because you have never been kind to me.”
33. He said to me, “How much money can you give me for the service I have done to you?”
34. Ramu said, “What a place!”
35. “Stop this horrible noise,” he said.
36. The prince said, “It gives me great pleasure to be here this evening.”